RICOH FAX7000L

FIELD SERVICE MANUAL

WARNING

THIS MACHINE CONTAINS A LASER BEAM GENERATOR. LASER BEAMS CAN CAUSE PERMANENT EYE DAMAGE. DO NOT OPEN THE LASER UNIT OR LOOK ALONG THE LASER BEAM PATH WHILE THE MAIN POWER IS ON.



CONTENTS

SECTION 1. INSTALLATION

| 1-1. Specifications | 1-1 |
|---|------|
| 1-2. Features | 1-4 |
| 1-3. Installation Requirements | 1-14 |
| 1-3-1. Environment | 1-14 |
| 1-3-2. Minimum Space Requirements | 1-15 |
| 1-3-3. Power Requirements | 1-16 |
| 1-4. Unpacking | 1-17 |
| 1-5. Accessory Check List | 1-18 |
| 1-6. Installation Procedure | 1-19 |
| 1-6-1. Master Unit | 1-19 |
| 1-6-2. Toner | 1-20 |
| 1-6-3. Cassettes | 1-22 |
| 1-6-4. Telephone | 1-23 |
| 1-6-5. Cleaning Pad | 1-23 |
| 1-6-6. Other Components | 1-24 |
| 1-6-7. Power Connection | 1-24 |
| 1-6-8. Hard Disk Initialization | 1-25 |
| 1-7. Initial Programming | 1-27 |
| 1-7-1. Country Code - Function 81 | 1-27 |
| 1-7-2. Fax Terminal's Telephone Number - | |
| Function 81 | 1-28 |
| 1-7-3. Transfer Station Number - Function 81. | 1-28 |
| 1-7-4. Polling ID Code - Function 82 | 1-29 |
| 1-7-5. Confidential ID Code - Function 83 | 1-29 |
| 1-7-6. RTI #1 and RTI #2 - Function 84 | 1-30 |

| 1-7-7. TTI #1 and TTI #2 - Function 85 1-31 |
|--|
| 1-7-8. CSI - Function 86 |
| (W. Germany: Service Function 11)1-31 |
| 1-7-9. Date and Time - Function 87 1-32 |
| 1-7-10. Telephone Line Type - |
| Service Function 12 1-32 |
| 1-7-11. Reception Mode - Function 88 1-33 |
| 1-8. Charge Control Parameter Programming . 1-34 |
| 1-9. Transporting the Machine 1-39 |
| |

SECTION 2. PROGRAMMING, TESTING, AND PRINTING REPORTS

| 2-1. Operation Panel | | 2-1 |
|--|--|--------|
| 2-2. User Level Programming | | . 2-5 |
| 2-2-1. Function List | | . 2-5 |
| 2-2-2. Others | | . 2-13 |
| 1. Multicopy Mode | | . 2-13 |
| 2. Keystroke Programs | | . 2-13 |
| 2-3. Service Level Functions | | . 2-14 |
| 2-3-1. Function List | | . 2-14 |
| 2-3-2. Entering and Exiting Service Mode | | . 2-18 |
| 2-3-3. Bit Switches - Function 01 | | . 2-19 |
| 2-3-4. CCU - Function 02 | | . 2-20 |
| 1. G3 CCU Test Mode | | . 2-20 |
| 2. G3 Dump List 1 | | . 2-22 |
| 3. G3 Dump List 2 | | . 2-22 |
| • | | |

| 4. NCU Parameter Programming | 2-23 |
|--|------|
| 2-3-5. RAM - Function 03 | 2-24 |
| 1. RAM Read/Write | 2-24 |
| 2. Memory Dump List | 2-25 |
| 3. Hard Disk Dump | 2-26 |
| 4. G3 CCU Handshake Logging Dump List | 2-27 |
| 5. SPU Handshake Logging Dump List | 2-27 |
| 6. Error Code Logging Dump List | 2-28 |
| 7. Multicopy | 2-28 |
| 8. Counter Check | 2-29 |
| 9. Charge Control | 2-29 |
| 2-3-6. Service Station Number - Function 04 | 2-30 |
| 2-3-7. Counter Check - Function 05 | 2-30 |
| 2-3-8. Service Monitor Report Printing - | |
| Function 06 | 2-31 |
| 2-3-9. Parameter List Printing - Function 07 | 2-31 |
| 2-3-10. Serial Number Programming - | |
| Function 08 | 2-32 |
| 2-3-11. Tests - Function 09 | 2-32 |
| 1. Printer Tests | 2-32 |
| 2. Fluorescent Lamp Lighting | 2-33 |
| 3. SPU Reset | 2-34 |
| 4. Operation Panel Test | 2-34 |
| 5. RAM Test | 2-35 |
| 6. DCR Test | 2-36 |
| 7. ADF Mechanism Test | 2-36 |
| 8. SPU Test Menu | 2-37 |
| 9. Hard Disk Test | 2-37 |
| 2-3-12. Printer Status - Function 14 | 2-38 |
| 2-3-13. Transmission Status Report - | |
| Function 15 | 2-40 |
| | |

| 2-3-14. G4 CCU Parameters - Function 16 2-42 2-3-15. System Data List - Function 17 2-42 |
|---|
| 2-3-16. Hard Disk Shipping Position - |
| Function 18 |
| 2-3-17. Dedicated Transmission Parameters 2-43 |
| 2-3-18. Back to Back Test |
| 2-3-19. Machine Reset |
| 2-4. Bit Switches |
| 1. SCU - Factory Settings |
| 2. SCU - Bit Switch Tables 2-49 |
| 3. G3 CCU - Factory Settings 2-85 |
| 4. G3 CCU - Bit Switch Tables 2-87 |
| 2-5. NCU Parameters |
| 2-6. Useful RAM Addresses |
| Redialling |
| Charge Control Parameters |
| Charge Control Report Printout Date 2-116 |
| |

SECTION 3. REMOVAL AND REPLACEMENT

| 3-1. Covers | 3-2 |
|---|-----|
| 3-1-1. Lower Front Right, Lower Left, and | |
| Upper Front Covers | 3-2 |
| 3-1-2. Operation Panel | 3-3 |
| 3-1-3. Upper Rear, Lower Rear, and | |
| BSRU Covers | 3-4 |
| 3-1-4. Top Right and Top Covers | 3-4 |
| 3-1-5. Rear Inner Cover, Right Inner Cover, | |
| and Document Table | 3-5 |
| 3-1-6. Front Inner Cover | 3-5 |

| 3-2. ADF and Scanner | 3-6 |
|--|-------|
| 3-2-1. Document Feed and Pick-up Rollers . | . 3-6 |
| 3-2-2. Document Separation Roller | 3-7 |
| Separation Roller Adjustment | 3-8 |
| 3-2-3. Fluorescent Lamp | 3-9 |
| 3-2-4. Fluorescent Lamp Driver | 3-9 |
| 3-2-5. SBU | 3-10 |
| Scanner Adjustments | 3-11 |
| 3-2-6. Tx Motor Timing Belt Adjustment | 3-19 |
| 3-3. Printer - Charge | 3-20 |
| 3-3-1. Charge Corona Wire | 3-20 |
| 3-4. Printer - Exposure | 3-22 |
| 3-4-1. Second Cylindrical Lens | 3-22 |
| 3-4-2. Pentagonal Mirror and Motor | 3-23 |
| 3-4-3. Pentagonal Mirror Motor Driver | |
| (SMDR) | 3-25 |
| 3-4-4 ISD | 3-25 |
| 3-4-5 Laser Diode Unit | 3-26 |
| 3-5. Printer - Paper Feed | 3-27 |
| 3-5-1 Upper Paper Feed and Pick-up | 0 |
| Bollers | 3-27 |
| 3-5-2 Upper Paper Separation Boller and | 0 2. |
| Spring Clutch | 3-28 |
| 3-5-3 Lower Paper Feed and Pick-up | 0 20 |
| Bollers | 3-29 |
| 3-5-4 Lower Paper Separation Boller | 3-29 |
| 3-5-5 Master Belt Drive Motor Timing Belt | 0 20 |
| Adjustment | 3-30 |
| 3-5-6 Unner Paner Lift Mechanism | 0-00 |
| Δdiustmont | 3-30 |
| | 5-30 |

| 3-6. Printing - Development | 3-31 |
|--|--------|
| 3-6-1. Development Unit | 3-31 |
| 3-6-2. Toner Metering Blade | 3-31 |
| 3-6-3. Development Roller | 3-32 |
| 3-7. Printer - Transfer | 3-33 |
| 3-7-1. Transfer Corona Wire | 3-33 |
| 3-7-2. Transfer Entrance Guide Plate | |
| Adjustment | 3-35 |
| 3-8. Printer - Fusing | 3-36 |
| 3-8-1. Fusing Unit | 3-36 |
| 3-8-2. Thermostat | 3-38 |
| 3-8-3. Fusing Lamp/Thermistor Assembly | . 3-38 |
| 3-8-4. Hot Roller | 3-39 |
| 3-8-5. Pressure Roller | 3-40 |
| 3-8-6. Hot Roller Strippers | 3-40 |
| 3-9. Printer - Quenching | 3-42 |
| 3-9-1. Quenching Lamp | 3-42 |
| 3-10. PUBs | 3-43 |
| 3-10-1. SPU, VPU, G3CCU, and Modem | . 3-43 |
| 3-10-2. SCU and MBU | 3-44 |
| 3-10-3. UIB | 3-45 |
| 3-10-4. DSB | 3-45 |
| 3-10-5. DRU | 3-46 |
| 3-10-6. Power Pack | 3-46 |
| 3-10-7. PSU | 3-48 |
| 3-10-8. Hard Disk | 3-48 |
| 3-10-9. G3NCU | 3-50 |
| 3-10-10. LIB | 3-50 |
| 3-10-11. BSRU | 3-51 |
| 3-11. Others | 3-51 |
| 3-11-1. Gas Spring Adjustment | 3-51 |

SECTION 4. SERVICE TABLES

| 4-1. PM Table | 4-1 |
|--|-----|
| 4-2. General Service Tables | 4-3 |
| 4-2-1. Test Points | 4-3 |
| 4-2-2. Variable Resistors and Capacitors | 4-5 |
| 4-2-3. Switches | 4-5 |
| 4-2-4. LED Indicators | 4-5 |
| 4-2-5. Jumpers | 4-7 |
| 4-2-6. Special Tools and Lubricants | 4-9 |

SECTION 5. TROUBLESHOOTING

| 5-1. Quality Checks | 5-1 |
|---|------|
| 1. Copy Quality | 5-1 |
| 1. Copy Density | 5-2 |
| 2. Skew | 5-2 |
| 3. Intelligibility | 5-2 |
| 4. Copy Test | 5-2 |
| 2. Operation Panel Display | 5-3 |
| 3. Mechanism Test | 5-3 |
| 4. Communication Tests | 5-3 |
| 5-2. Copy Quality Troubleshooting | 5-4 |
| 5-3. Mechanical Problems | 5-28 |
| 5-4. Service Call Conditions | 5-41 |
| 5-5. Error Codes | 5-48 |
| 5-6. Hard Disk Troubleshooting Routines | 5-64 |
| 1. Outline | 5-64 |
| 2. Entering and Exiting Hard Disk | |
| Troubleshooting Mode | 5-65 |
| 3. Functions | 5-65 |

| 3-1. System Start - Function 1 5-65 |
|---|
| 3-2. Error Code Display - Function 2 5-66 |
| 3-3. File Correction - Function 3 5-67 |
| 3-4. Random Read Test - Function 4 5-67 |
| 3-5. All Read Test - Function 5 5-67 |
| 3-6. Clear Address - Function 6 5-68 |
| 3-7. Clear Job - Function 7 5-68 |
| 3-8. Disk Format - Function 8 5-69 |
| 4. Error Codes 5-70 |
| 4-1. Power-up Error Codes 5-70 |
| 4-2. Hard Disk Error Codes 5-71 |

SECTION 6. OPTIONAL BAR CODE READER

| 6-1. | Accessory | Check | List | | | | | 6-1 |
|------|--------------|-------|-------|--|--|--|--|-----|
| 6-2. | Installation | Proce | edure | | | | | 6-2 |

SECTION 7. ELECTRICAL DATA

| 7-1. | Point | -to |)-p | oi | nt | D |)ia | gr | an | n | | | | 7-1 |
|------|-------|-----|-----|----|-----|---|-----|----|----|---|--|--|--|------|
| 7-2. | Signa | ıl | Τa | ab | les | 5 | | | | | | | | 7-4 |
| 1. | SCU | | | | | | | | | | | | | 7-4 |
| 2. | SPU | | | | | | | | | | | | | 7-11 |
| 3. | VPU | | | | | | | | | | | | | 7-20 |
| 4. | SBU | | | | | | | | | | | | | 7-20 |
| 5. | DRU | | | | | | | | | | | | | 7-20 |
| 6. | UIB | | | | | | | | | | | | | 7-22 |
| 7. | DSB | | | | | | | | | | | | | 7-24 |
| 8. | LIB . | | | | | | | | | | | | | 7-25 |
| 9. | OPU | | | | | | | | | | | | | 7-26 |

| 10. PSU |
|---------------------------------------|
| 11. G3 CCU |
| 12. G3 NCU 7-30 |
| 13. BSRU |
| 7-3. Block Diagrams |
| 1. Overall Machine Control 7-32 |
| 2. Video Data Path |
| 3. Power Distribution |
| 4. Scanner |
| 5. Communication Control 7-46 |
| 6. Printer |
| 7-4. Electrical Component Layout 7-51 |
| 7-5. Timing Charts |

APPENDIX

SECTION 1

INSTALLATION

SECTION 1. INSTALLATION

| 1-1. Specifications | 1-1 |
|-----------------------------------|------|
| 1-2. Features | 1-4 |
| 1-3. Installation Requirements | 1-14 |
| 1-3-1. Environment | 1-14 |
| 1-3-2. Minimum Space Requirements | 1-15 |
| 1-3-3. Power Requirements | 1-16 |
| 1-4. Unpacking | 1-17 |
| 1-5. Accessory Check List | 1-18 |
| 1-6. Installation Procedure | 1-19 |
| 1-6-1. Master Unit | 1-19 |
| 1-6-2. Toner | 1-20 |
| 1-6-3. Cassettes | 1-22 |
| 1-6-4. Telephone | 1-23 |
| 1-6-5. Cleaning Pad | 1-23 |
| 1-6-6. Other Components | 1-24 |
| 1-6-7. Power Connection | 1-24 |
| 1-6-8. Hard Disk Initialization | 1-25 |

1-1. Specifications

| Туре | | Console-type transceiver | | | |
|--------------------------|---------|--|----------------------------------|--|--|
| Circuit | | PSTN, PABX | | | |
| Connection | | Direct couple | | | |
| Document size Length: | | Auto Doc. FeedManual Doc. Feed105 - 600 mm105 - 1,200 mm[4.13 - 23.6 ins][4.13 - 47.2 ins]Unlimited length is available.User must support documents longer than420 mm [16 5 ins] | | | |
| Width: | | 105 - 304 mm [4 1 - 12 0 ins] | | | |
| Thickness: | | 0.05 - 0.2 mm [2 - 8 mils] | 0.04 - 0.4 mm [2 - 16 mils] | | |
| | Weight: | About 50 to 80 g/m ² | About 40 to 120 g/m ² | | |
| Document feed | Ł | Automatic feed, face down | ı | | |
| ADF capacity | | 30 sheets (using 75 g/m²) | paper) | | |
| Scanning meth | nod | Flat bed, with CCD | | | |
| Maximum scar | n width | 304 mm [12.0 ins] | | | |

| Scan resolution | Main scan: | Standard, Detail - 200 dpi (7.87 dots/mm) Super Fine - 400 dpi (15.75 dots/mm) Options: 8, 16 dots/mm | | | |
|-------------------|---|---|--|--|--|
| | Sub scan: | Standard - 100 dpi (3.94 lines/mm) Detail - 200 dpi (7.877 lines/mm) Super Fine - 400 dpi (15.75 lines/mm) Options: 3.85, 7.7, 15.4 lines/mm | | | |
| | 300 x 300 dpi (11.8 x 11.8 dots per mm) is also available after programming a user function key (tx mode only). | | | | |
| Memory capacity | Hard disk, 18 M capacity after formatting | | | | |
| Compression | MH, MR, EFC, MMR, New EFC | | | | |
| Modulation | V.29, V.27te | r, V.21, AM-PM-VSB, QAM | | | |
| Protocol | Groups 2, and 3 with ECM; autocompatibility Group 4 interface option available | | | | |
| Data rate | 9600/7200/4800/2400 bps; automatic fallback | | | | |
| Transmission time | 10 s for a CCITT #1 document (Slerexe letter) using standard resolution | | | | |
| Printing system | Laser printir | ng, plain paper, dry toner | | | |

| Paper size | Letter [8.5 x 11"] Legal [8.5 x 14"] B4 A4 | | |
|----------------------------|--|--|--|
| Maximum printout width | 250 mm [9.8 ins] | | |
| Maximum printer resolution | Main scan - 400 dots/inch [15.75 dots/mm] Sub scan - 400 lines/inch [15.75 dots/mm] | | |
| Power supply | 220 Vac + 22/-33 V; 50/60 Hz +/- 1 Hz 240 Vac + 24/-36 V; 50/60 Hz +/- 1 Hz | | |
| Power consumption (W) | Standby:90Transmit:140Receive:900Copying:900 | | |
| Operating Environment | Temperature: 5 - 35 degC [41 - 95 degF] Humidity: 10 - 85 %Rh | | |
| Dimensions (W x D x H) | 475 x 603 x 388 (mm) 18.7 x 23.7 x 15.3 (inches) Excludes trays and cassette | | |
| Weight | 55 kg [121 lbs] | | |

1-2. Features

| Equipment Ava | /ailability Default |
|--|---------------------|
| Built-in handset | Х |
| Connection for external tel. | 0 |
| Base cabinet | o KEY |
| Manual feed for thick originals | o o = Used |
| Monitor speaker | o x = Not used |
| Microphone | 0 |
| Speakerphone | X |
| Stamp | 0 |
| Remaining memory indicator (Function mode) | e) O |

| Video Processing | Availability | Default |
|---|--------------|-------------|
| Features | | |
| Contrast (Lighten, Normal, Darken) | 0 | See Note 1. |
| Resolution (Std, Dtl, Super Fine) | 0 | |
| Halftone | 0 | |
| MTF (selectable by service) | Х | |
| Reduction - A3 to A4 | 0 | 0 |
| - A3 to B4 | 0 | 0 |
| - B4 to A4 | 0 | 0 |
| Smoothing (rx) - 200 x 100 to 400 x 400 | 0 | 0 |
| - 200 x 200 to 400 x 400 | 0 | 0 |

| Communication Features - Automatic | Availability | Default |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------|
| Scanning and storing during tx or rx | 0 | |
| Redialling | 0 | Four redials |
| G2, G3 compatibility | 0 | |
| Automatic fallback | 0 | |
| Confidential/substitute reception | 0 | Confidential: Not used in W. Germany |
| Page retransmission from memory | 0 | |

| Communication Features - User Selectable | Availability | Default |
|---|--------------|--|
| Auto/Manual reception | 0 | |
| On hook dial | х | |
| Speed Dial | 2,000 | |
| Quick Dial Keys | 50 | |
| Keystroke programs (See Note 2) | 50 | |
| Groups | 32 | |
| - max no. of addresses/group | 200 | |
| - max no. of full tel nos. in all groups | 1,020 | |
| Alternative destination | 0 | (with Quick and Speed Dial only) |
| Department code | 0 | |
| Batch numbering | 0 | |
| MMR/EFC disabling option | 0 | |
| ECM disabling option | o (Not a | vailable in machines from factory for W. Germany |
| Turnaround polling | 0 | |

Continued on the next page

| Communication Features - User Selectable (continued) | Availability | Default |
|---|--------------|------------------------|
| Auto-reduction override option | 0 | |
| Immediate redial | 0 | |
| Auto-answer delay time | Х | |
| Hold | Х | |
| Voice Request | 0 | |
| Automatic Voice Message | 0 | Not used in W. Germany |

| Communication Features - Service Selectable | Availability | Default |
|--|--------------|------------------|
| Closed network | 0 | х |
| MV1200 compatibility | Х | |
| Short preamble | 0 | Х |
| Well log (tx) | 0 | Х |
| Protection against bad connections | Х | |
| EFC | 0 | Tx - on, Rx - on |
| PSTN access through PBX | 0 | х |
| Polling ID code security | Х | |
| ECM | 0 | 0 |
| Operator restriction by department code | 0 | х |
| Resol'n stepdown override option | X | |
| Conf'l password override option | 0 | |

| Special Communication | Availability | Default |
|--|--------------|------------------------|
| Features | | |
| Transmission from memory | 0 | |
| - immediate | 0 | |
| - send later | 0 | |
| - max no. of addresses/file | 200 | |
| - max no. of files | 500 | |
| - max no. of addresses over all files | 1,020 | See Note 3 (p. 1-13). |
| Send Later | 0 | |
| Confidential Transmission | 0 | Not used in W. Germany |
| - immediate | 0 | Not used in W. Germany |
| - send later | 0 | Not used in W. Germany |
| - broadcasting | 0 | Not used in W. Germany |
| - remote password override | 0 | Not used in W. Germany |
| Transfer Request | 0 | Not used in W. Germany |
| - max no. of broadcasters | 200 | Not used in W. Germany |
| - max no. of end receivers | 30 | Not used in W. Germany |
| - time designatable | 0 | Not used in W. Germany |
| Action as a Transfer Broadcaster | 0 | Not used in W. Germany |
| Polling Transmission | 0 | |
| - free/secured option | 0 | |
| - stored ID override | 0 | |
| - from memory | 0 | |
| - 1 day/1 polling memory duration option | 0 | 1 day |

Continued on the next page

| Special Communication Features (Continued) | Availability | Default | |
|---|--------------|-----------------------|--|
| Polling Reception | 0 | | |
| - free/secured option | 0 | | |
| - stored ID override | 0 | | |
| - poll later: max no. of files | 500 | | |
| : max addresses/file | 200 | | |
| : max addresses overall | 1,020 | See Note 3 (p. 1-13). | |
| Batch transmission | 0 | 0 | |
| Forwarding | 0 | | |
| Transmission deadline | 0 | | |
| Notify | X | | |

| Other Features | Availability | Default | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|-------------|--|
| Multicopy: max 99 copies/original | 0 | | |
| Copy mode | 0 | | |
| User function keys | 0 | See Note 2. | |
| Dialled tel. number check | 0 | | |
| Auto note | 0 | | |
| A3-width transmission | 0 | | |
| LCD brightness adjustment | 0 | | |
| Night timer | 0 | | |
| Printing out a memory file | 0 | | |

| Reports - Automatic | Availability | Default |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------|
| Journal (optional) | 0 | 0 |
| Charge Control Report | 0 | W. Germany/Italy: o, Others: x |
| Tx Result Report (optional) | 0 | 0 |
| Error Report (optional) | 0 | х |
| Transfer Result Report | 0 | Not used in W. Germany |
| Mode Change Report | 0 | W. Germany: o, Others: x |
| Polling File List | 0 | |
| Memory Report (optional) | 0 | х |
| Power Failure Report | 0 | |
| Polling Result Report (optional) | 0 | 0 |
| Polling Reserve Report (optional) | 0 | 0 |
| Polling Clear Report (optional) | 0 | 0 |

| Reports - User | Availability | Default |
|--------------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------|
| Journal | 0 | |
| Charge Control Report | 0 | W. Germany/Italy: o, Others: x |
| Telephone List (includes Group List) | 0 | |
| Polling File List | 0 | |
| SAF File List | 0 | |
| User Function List | 0 | |
| Department Code List | 0 | |
| Transmission Status Report | 0 | |
| Program List | 0 | |

| Reports - Service | Availability | Default |
|-----------------------------|--------------|---------------------|
| Group 3 Protocol Dump Lists | 0 | |
| Auto Service Call | 0 | |
| System Parameter List | 0 | |
| RAM Address Dump | 0 | |
| Hard Disk Dump | 0 | |
| Handshake Logging Dump | 0 | (For G3CCU and SPU) |
| Error Code Logging Dump | 0 | |
| Transmission Status Report | 0 | |
| System Data List | 0 | |
| Service Monitor Report | 0 | |

| User Programming | Availability | Default | |
|----------------------------|--------------|---------|--|
| Clock | 0 | | |
| Auto/Manual Rx setting | 0 | Auto | |
| Tx/Rx page counter display | 0 | | |
| Sheet feed counter display | 0 | | |
| Batch number on/off | 0 | x | |
| Department code on/off | 0 | x | |
| Speaker volume adjustment | 0 | | |

Continued on the next page

| User Programming | Availability | Default | |
|--|---------------------|-------------|--|
| (Continued) | | | |
| Automatic Voice Message recording | 0 | | |
| Automatic Voice Message playback | 0 | | |
| Automatic Voice Message on/off | 0 | 0 | |
| Quick Dial/Group programming | 0 | | |
| Polling ID code | 0 | | |
| RTI/TTI/CSI | 0 | See Note 4. | |
| RTI #2, TTI #2 | 0 | | |
| Direct entry of labels and identifiers | 0 | | |
| Changing the contents of a file | 0 | | |
| Polling file clearance | 0 | | |
| Memory file clearance | 0 | | |
| Own telephone number | 0 | | |
| Telephone line type (See Note 4.) | U. K.: o, Others: x | Pulse | |
| TTI on/off | 0 | 0 | |
| ECM on/off | 0 | | |
| Substitute reception on/off | x | | |
| Forwarding | 0 | | |
| Stamp on/off | 0 | Х | |
| Password | 0 | | |
| Rx mode switching timer | x | | |
| Master unit counter reset | 0 | | |
| Keystroke programs | 0 | | |

ECM on/off is not available in machines shipped for W. Germany. It can be made available by bit switch adjustment.

| Service Mode and | Availability | Default |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|---------|
| System Tests | | |
| Dedicated 1x Parameters | 0 | |
| Printout of all memory files | х | |
| Bit switches | 0 | |
| RAM rewriting - to local fax only | 0 | |
| Error code display | 0 | |
| Printer status display | 0 | |
| Counter check and rewrite | 0 | |
| Chequered mark on 1st page on/off | 0 | 0 |
| Number of copies per printout | 0 | 1 |
| Rx fax printout in reverse page order | 0 | Х |
| Serial number programming | 0 | |
| NCU parameters | 0 | |
| Modem and DTMF tone tests | 0 | |
| Operation panel test | 0 | |
| Fluorescent lamp lighting | 0 | |
| Back-to-back test | 0 | |
| RAM tests | 0 | |
| Hard disk tests and maintenance | 0 | |
| SPU tests | 0 | |
| DCR tests | 0 | |
| SPU reset | 0 | |
| Printer test patterns | 0 | |
| Maximum address limitation | Х | |
| ADF/printer mechanism tests | 0 | |

Notes

- 1. Contrast can also be selected in halftone mode.
- The keystroke programs are stored in Quick Dial Keys, so the no. of programmed Quick Dial Keys plus the no. of programs plus the number of user function keys programmed as Quick Dial Keys cannot exceed 50 (user function keys can also be stored as Quick Dial Keys if more than 5 keys are needed).
- 3. The number of addresses programmed for polling reception and for memory transmission, when combined, cannot exceed 1,020.
- 4. CSI is a service function in W. Germany. Telephone line type selection is a service mode in all except machines for the U.S.A. and the U. K..

1-3. Installation Requirements



Avoid placing the machine where it will be exposed to corrosive gases.

Place the machine on a strong and level base.

Place the machine where it will be:

- · Not subject to direct sunlight
- Not subject to strong vibration
- · Condensation free
- · Away from other electronic equipment, to avoid interference
- · Away from heaters and air conditioners, to avoid sudden temperature changes.

1-3-2. Minimum Space Requirements



1-3-3. Power Requirements

Voltage

• 220 Vac + 22/-33 V, or 240 Vac + 24/-36 V, 50/60 Hz, capable of supplying more than 10 A

Power Outlet

- Must be properly grounded
- If possible, do not connect other equipment to the same outlet.
- Insert the plug securely.

1-4. Unpacking

- 1. Remove the packing clips from the carton.
- 2. Remove the two cushion blocks.
- 3. Take the accessories box and the machine out of the carton.
- 4. Open the vinyl envelope and take out the machine.
- 5. Peel off the packing tapes from the outside of the machine.
- 6. Inside the machine, remove the packing tapes from the development unit, registration roller, jam removal lever (lower cassette), and the upper and lower paper lift arms.
- 7. Open the lower front cover and remove the cushion block from inside the lower cassette.
- 8. Place the machine on a table.

Caution: The table must be horizontally level within 2 degrees.



Open the accessories box and check that the following items are present.

| 1. Vinyl Gloves | 1 set |
|---|--------|
| 2. Plastic Bag | 1 |
| 3. Toner Cartridges | 2 |
| 4. Cleaning Pad | 1 |
| 5. Cassettes | |
| (upper and lower) | 2 |
| 6. Paper Size Actuators | 6 |
| 7. Paper Size Decals | 2 sets |
| 8. Sub-document Table | 1 |
| 9. Document Tray | 1 |
| 10. Copy Tray | 1 |
| Quick Dial Labels | 2 |
| 12. User Function Key Cards | 2 |
| User Function Label | 1 |
| 14. Speed Dial Address | |
| Decal | 5 pcs |
| 15. Operator's Manual | 1 |
| 16. Stamp Ink | 1 |
| 17. Pack of Paper | 1 |
| 18. Power Cord | 1 |
| 19. Master Unit | 1 |
| 20. NECR | 1 |
| 21. Scanner Pick-up Roller | 1 |
| 22. Microphone | 1 |































1-6-1. Master Unit

1. Remove the three plastic wedges from the master unit.

Caution: Do not remove the green plastic cover.

- 2. Open the upper unit and insert the master unit into the machine with the green plastic cover facing out.
- 3. Take off the green plastic cover.
 - Note: Do not touch the master belt surface (purple sheet), and do not expose it to direct sunlight or bright light.
- 4. Close the upper unit.







1-6-2. Toner

- 1. Open the right cover.
- 2. Shake a toner cartridge well.
- 3. Remove the cartridge crank from the cartridge.
- 4. Set the pins on the toner cartridge into the slots on the development unit.
- 5. Rotate the cartridge up until it snaps into position.







- 6. Fit the cartridge crank (or winding lever) onto the pin on the bottom left of the cartridge.
- 7. Turn the crank (or winding lever) clockwise to strip off the cartridge seal, until you see the yellow band. Then remove the cartridge crank (or winding lever).
 - CAUTION: If the yellow band is not showing, the plastic strip could become caught in the toner mixing mechanism, leading to machine damage.
- Remove the empty toner cartridge and install another (refer to steps 2 to 7). Place the empty cartridge in the disposal bag.

Note: When adding toner during normal operation, only one cartridge should be replaced.

9. Close the right cover.



Turn until you see the yellow band.



1-6-3. Cassettes

Remove the tape from the trays in the upper and lower cassettes.

Put some copy paper in the cassettes, attach the cassette top covers, and install the cassettes.

- Note: The cassettes are set up for Letter-size paper. If the user wishes to use a different papersize than this, modify the cassette(s) as follows.
- 1. Move the rear and side fences to the appropriate positions.
- 2. Attach the appropriate paper size decal to the tray.
- 3. Change the paper size actuator to the appropriate one.
- 4. Add paper.
- 5. Attach the top cover.
- 6. Install the cassette.





1-6-4. Telephone

1. If you connect a telephone to the rear of the machine, make sure that the type of dialling signal generated by the telephone matches the type of signal that the local exchange accepts (pulse or tone dialing).

1-6-5. Cleaning Pad

- 1. Open the copy exit cover.
- 2. Install the cleaning pad (4 screws).
- 3. Close the copy exit cover.



1-6-6. Other Components

- 1. Attach the function label.
- 2. Attach the copy tray.
- 3. Attach the document tray.

1-6-7. Power Connection

- 1. Connect the power cord to a supply of the type specified on page 1-16.
- 2. Voltage must not fluctuate more than the limits specified on page 1-16.
- 3. Make sure that the plug is firmly inserted into the outlet.
- 4. A dedicated circuit is recommended.

1-6-8. Hard Disk Initialization

1. Switch the main power on.

If an error message is displayed at this time, there is a problem with the hard disk. See page 5-70 (Power-up Error Codes).

- 2. Within 3 seconds of switching the power on, press Function, then *, then #. An error message is displayed. However, there is no problem unless an error code is displayed in the central line of the LCD. If an error message is displayed at this time, there is a problem with the hard disk. See page 5-70 (Power-up Error Codes).
- 3. Press Function, then *, then # once more.
- 4. The hard disk troubleshooting menu is displayed. Press 8 then Yes.

- 5. When ENTER PASSWORD is displayed, enter 1988, then press Yes.
- 6. When "Initialize System? Y/N" is displayed, press Yes.
- 7. Enter the bad spot information listed on the decal inside the lower front cover. The format of data on the label is shown in the following example: CYL HD BYTE 319 1 8132

In the above example, press 31918132.

Press the down arrow on the scroll key to enter the next bad spot.

If there are no more bad spots, press Yes.

- Note: Bad spots that develop after shipment from the factory and during machine use are automatically discovered and stored in the system RAM when the following conditions occur. Such areas will be avoided when storing messages and parameters to the disk.
 - During formatting, either at installation or at any other time
 - During use, if an error occurs, the machine will avoid the area of the disk that caused the error. In this case, the memory capacity display will read less than 100%, even if there are no fax messages on the hard disk.
- 8. "Initialize System Y/N' is displayed again. Press Yes to format the hard disk.
- 9. After formatting, the machine automatically enters initial programming mode. After doing the initial programming (see section 1-7), press Function to return the machine to standby.
- 10. Program the CSI (section 1-7-8), telephone line type (section 1-7-10), charge control parameters (section 1-8), serial number (section 2-3-10) and the service station telephone number (section 2-3-6).
1-7. Initial Programming

After installation, the following items should be programmed. They can all be programmed by the user. They can all be programmed in sequence by using Function 81. In this manual, each individual procedure will be explained.

1-7-1. Country Code - Function 81

Program the international dial access code then the country code.

- 1. Make sure that the machine is in standby mode.
- 2. Press Function, then enter 80, then enter 2222.
- 3. Enter 81.
- Enter the international dial access code then the country code. For example, enter 00144 (International code = 001, country code = 44). To correct a mistake, press Clear (erases the last digit or the cursor digit), or No (erases the entire code).
- 5. Press Yes to store the displayed codes, then press Function to return the machine to standby mode.

1-7-2. Fax Terminal's Telephone Number - Function 81

If this number is not programmed, Transfer Request is impossible.

- 1. Make sure that the machine is in standby mode.
- 2. Press Function, then enter 80, then enter 2222.
- 3. Enter 81, then press Yes.
- 4. Enter the fax terminal's telephone number. Place a pause after the area code, using the Pause key. To correct a mistake, press Clear (erases the last digit or the cursor digit), or No (erases the entire number).
- 5. Press Yes to store the displayed number, then press Function to return the machine to standby mode.

1-7-3. Transfer Station Number - Function 81

If this machine will be used as the first stage in a two-step transfer operation, the number of the terminal acting as the second stage must be stored here. This function is only used in Group 4 communications.

- 1. Make sure that the machine is in standby mode.
- 2. Press Function, then enter 80, then enter 2222.
- 3. Enter 81, then press Yes twice.
- Enter the transfer station number. To correct a mistake, press Clear (erases the last digit or the cursor digit), or No (erases the entire number).
- 5. Press Yes to store the displayed number, then press Function to return the machine to standby mode.

1-7-4. Polling ID Code - Function 82

This four-digit code is necessary for secured polling, closed network communication, and transfer request. All terminals in these types of communications must decide on the same ID code or the communication will fail.

1. Make sure that the machine is in standby mode.

2. Press Function, then enter 80, then enter 2222.

3. Enter 82.

- 4. Enter the code. Do not use 0000 or FFFF.
- 5. Press Yes to store the displayed code, then press Function to return the machine to standby mode.

1-7-5. Confidential ID Code - Function 83

This ID code is used to print confidential messages stored on the hard disk.

This function is not used in W. Germany.

- 1. Make sure that the machine is in standby mode.
- 2. Press Function, then enter 80, then enter 2222.
- 3. Enter 83.
- 4. Enter the code.
- 5. Press Yes to store the displayed code, then press Function to return the machine to standby mode.

1-7-6. RTI #1 and RTI #2 - Function 84

The RTI (Remote Terminal Identification) identifies your terminal at the other end. It is displayed on the operation panel at the other end during communication. RTI #1 will normally be used. However, when you program a number as a Speed Dial or Quick Dial, you can select either RTI #1 or RTI #2 for use when sending to that terminal. Note that if RTI #1 is selected, TTI #1 will also be used, and if RTI #2 is selected, TTI #2 will be used.

Each RTI can have up to 20 characters.

- 1. Make sure that the machine is in standby mode.
- 2. Press Function, then enter 80, then enter 2222.
- 3. Enter 84.
- Type in RTI #1. For numbers use the ten-key pad. For letters and punctuation marks, use the Quick Dial keys. For a space, use Quick Dial 27.
 To correct a mistake, press Clear (erases the last letter or the cursor letter), or No (erases the entire name).
- 5. Press Yes to store the displayed RTI.
- 6. Type in RTI #2 in the same way, then press Yes to store it.
- 7. Press Function to return the machine to standby mode.

1-7-7. TTI #1 and TTI #2 - Function 85

The TTI (Transmit Terminal Identification) is another label which identifies you at the other end. It is printed at the other end on the top line of each page that you send. Each TTI can have up to 32 characters.

- 1. Make sure that the machine is in standby mode.
- 2. Press Function, then enter 80, then enter 2222, then enter 85.
- 3. Either:
 - If RTI #1 can be easily added to or edited to make the TTI #1, then press 2. (Then, if TTI #1 is the same as RTI #1, press Yes and go to step 5.) To edit RTI #1, press 1 then go to step 4.
 - · To enter a TTI, press 1 and go to step 4.
- 4. Enter TTI #1 as explained for RTI #1 (page 1-30). Then press Yes twice to store it.
- 5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 for TTI #2.
- 6. Press Function to return the machine to standby mode.

1-7-8. CSI - Function 86 (W. Germany: Service Function 11)

In W. Germany, this is service function 11. The CSI (Called Subscriber Identification) is used instead of the RTI when the machine communicates with another maker's facsimile terminal.

- 1. Make sure that the machine is in standby mode.
- 2. W. Germany: Enter the service mode as shown on page 2-18, then enter 11. Other areas: Press Function, then enter 80, then enter 2222 then 86.
- 3. Enter the CSI. It is best to use the fax machine's telephone number. To correct a mistake, press Clear (erases the last digit), or No (erases the entire CSI).
- 4. Press Yes to store the displayed CSI, then press Function to return the machine to standby mode.

1-7-9. Date and Time - Function 87

- 1. Make sure that the machine is in standby mode.
- 2. Press Function, then enter 80, then enter 2222.
- 3. Enter 87.
- 4. Use the left and right arrows of the scroll key to highlight the parts of the display that need changing, and type in the new values at the ten key pad. For the month, press the down arrow on the scroll key until the correct month appears. The time is typed in using the 24 hour format.
- 5. Press Yes to store the displayed date and time, then press Function to return the machine to standby mode.

1-7-10. Telephone Line Type - Service Function 12 (U. K.: User Function 88)

This must match the dialling method accepted by the local exchange, or the machine will not be able to dial.

- 1. Make sure that the machine is in standby mode.
- 2. U.K. and U. S.A.: Press Function, enter 80, then 2222, then 88. Other areas: Enter the service mode as shown on page 2-18, then enter 12.
- 3. Use the left and right arrows of the scroll key to highlight the required setting.
- 4. Press Function to store the displayed setting and return the machine to standby mode.

1-7-11. Reception Mode - Function 88

Select either Automatic Reception (the machine receives fax messages automatically without intervention by the user) or Manual Reception (the user must be present by the machine when a fax message comes in).

- 1. Make sure that the machine is in standby mode.
- 2. Press Function, then enter 80, then enter 2222.
- 3. Enter 88, then press Yes.
- 4. Use the left and right arrows of the scroll key to highlight the required setting.
- 5. Press Function to store the displayed setting and return the machine to standby mode.

1-7-12. Service Station Number - Service Function 04

- 1. Make sure that the machine is in standby mode.
- 2. Enter the service mode as shown on page 2-18, then enter 04.
- 3. Type in the service station telephone number. Press Yes to store the number.
- 4. Type in the second service station number. Press Yes to store the number.
- 5. Press Function to return to standby mode.

1-7-13. Serial Number Programming - Service Function 08

- 1. Make sure that the machine is in standby mode.
- 2. Enter the service mode as shown on page 2-18, then enter 08.
- 3. Type in the serial number. Press Yes to store the number.
- 4. Press Function to return to standby mode.

1-8. Charge Control Parameter Programming

Using charge control, the user can check the cost of each call made with the machine. Charge control is only available on numbers that have been stored using Quick Dial, Speed Dial, Speed Dial # 1, or Speed Dial # 2, and is controlled using option 7 of the option menu for Quick/Speed Dial programming.

Using option 7, the user selects the time per unit cost for a particular charge period (see Charge Control Codes, M to P, below); the user selects the correct value for the address from a menu of values stored by the service technician.

Figures for West Germany and Italy have been programmed in the software. For other areas, a service technician must enter the following values in advance:

- Number of periods in the day having different rates (maximum 4 charge periods)
- Number of zones, in which the charge varies with distance (maximum 7 charge zones)
- Basic charge unit
- The charge periods
- The time per basic charge unit for each zone, during each period

The procedure is as follows.

1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.

2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 03 at the ten-key pad.

3. When the RAM menu is displayed, press 9. A table of 80 two-digit codes is displayed. An example is shown below.

0207 302E 3233 2044 4D00 FFFF 0800 1800 Only two rows (16 codes) are visible at once. More rows in the charge control table can be seen by pressing the down arrow on the cursor key.

- 4. Press the left and right arrows on the cursor key to highlight the number to be changed.
- 5. Type in any changes as required. The meanings of the codes are explained after this procedure.
- 6. Press Yes when all numbers have been entered.
- 7. Press Function if all service mode operations have been finished.

Charge Control Codes

To illustrate how to program the charge control parameters, let us represent the table of codes in the following manner. Remember that only two rows are visible at once. Following this explanation, an example will be given.

| AB | CD | EF | GH |
|----|----|-----|----|
| ١J | KL | MN | OP |
| QR | ST | UV | WX |
| YZ | ab | cd | ef |
| gh | ij | kl | mn |
| op | qr | st | uv |
| WX | yz | ab | cd |
| ef | gh | i j | kl |
| mn | ор | qr | st |
| uv | wx | γz | αβ |

A: This shows the number of different charge periods in the day. For example, if there are only two, enter 02.

B: This shows the number of charge zones. For example, if there are seven zones, enter 07.

C to L: These 10 ASCII codes show the basic charge unit. A table of ASCII codes follows at the end of this section. For example, to enter '0.23 DM' (0.23 German marks), enter 30 2E 32 33 20 44 4D 00 FF FF. '00' is entered at the end, after the 'M' in the example, and 'FF' is added to make the total up to 10 ASCII codes.

M to X: These show the charge periods. Up to four periods can be used. Enter all the periods except one; the missing one is deduced from the three entered periods. For example, if there are two periods, one from 08:00 to 18:00, and the other from 18:00 to 08:00, enter 08 00 18 00 in M, N, O, P, then enter 00 in codes Q to X. The machine will assume that there is another period from 18:00 to 08:00 to fill up the 24 hour day.

Note: When the customer enters the time per basic charge unit for a destination with Quick/Speed Dial option 7, the choices displayed will be based on the period entered in codes M to P. Therefore, in most cases, this should represent the peak rate, or the period in which the machine is most often used. Consult the user about which period to enter here.

The rest of thecodes are a table of times allowed per basic charge unit, for each zone, and for each period. The column YZ to *uv* shows the times allowed for calling during the period programmed in codes M to P, for up to 7 zones. These are the values from which the user selects using Quick/Speed Dial option 7. The column ab to *wx* shows the times per charge unit during the period programmed in codes Q to T, for up to 7 zones. However, if there are only two charge periods, this column will show the times for the period deduced by the machine to fill up the 24 hour day.

The column cd to *yz* shows the times per charge unit during the period programmed in codes U to X, for up to 7 zones. However, if there are only three charge periods, this column will show the times for the period deduced by the machine to fill up the 24 hour day.

The column ef to $\alpha\beta$ shows the times per charge unit during the fourth period, which is deduced by the machine from the other three periods. If there are less than four charge periods, this column is all blank. The codes are programmed as shown in the following examples: if the value is 3.8 seconds, enter 00 38; if the value is 12 seconds, enter 01 20; if the value is 480 seconds, enter 48 00. Any codes that do not need to be programmed must contain FF.

Example

Number of charge periods: 2 Number of charge zones: 7 Basic charge unit: 0.23 DM (Deutschmarks) Charge periods: (1) 08:00 to 18:00, (2) 18:00 to 08:00 Times allowed (seconds) in charge period 1 for each zone: 3.8, 10.7, 12, 12, 20, 45, 480 Times allowed (seconds) in charge period 2 for each zone: 3.8, 10.7, 16, 38.6, 38.6, 67.5, 720 The user wishes to see the times allowed for charge period 1 when programming Quick/Speed Dial.

Program the table as follows.

| 0207 | 302E | 3233 | 2044 |
|------|------|------|------|
| 4D00 | FFFF | 0800 | 1800 |
| 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 |
| 4800 | 7200 | FFFF | FFFF |
| 0450 | 0675 | FFFF | FFFF |
| 0200 | 0386 | FFFF | FFFF |
| 0120 | 0386 | FFFF | FFFF |
| 0120 | 0160 | FFFF | FFFF |
| 0107 | 0107 | FFFF | FFFF |
| 0038 | 0038 | FFFF | FFFF |

ASCII Codes

Do not use other codes than listed here, or Japanese characters will appear.

| Symbol | Code | Symbol | Code | Symbol | Code | Symbol | Code |
|-----------|------|--------|------|--------|------|------------|------|
| Space | 20 | 0 | 30 | @ | 40 | Р | 50 |
| ! | 21 | 1 | 31 | А | 41 | Q | 51 |
| 11 | 22 | 2 | 32 | В | 42 | R | 52 |
| # | 23 | 3 | 33 | С | 43 | S | 53 |
| \$ | 24 | 4 | 34 | D | 44 | Т | 54 |
| % | 25 | 5 | 35 | Е | 45 | U | 55 |
| & | 26 | 6 | 36 | F | 46 | V | 56 |
| , | 27 | 7 | 37 | G | 47 | W | 57 |
| (| 28 | 8 | 38 | Н | 48 | Х | 58 |
|) | 29 | 9 | 39 | Ι | 49 | Y | 59 |
| * | 2A | : | ЗA | J | 4A | Z | 5A |
| + | 2B | • | 3B | K | 4B | [| 5B |
| Comma | 2C | < | 3C | L | 4C | Yen | 5D |
| - | 2D | = | 3D | М | 4D |] | 5D |
| Full stop | 2E | > | 3E | Ν | 4E | Inverted v | 5E |
| / | 2F | ? | 3F | 0 | 4F | - | 5F |

When moving the machine to a new location, it is important to move the hard disk read/write head back to its shipping position. Do the following procedure.

- 1. Press Function, then enter 80 at the ten-key pad.
- 2. Enter 1988 then press Yes.
- 3. Enter 18 at the ten-key pad. The head moves to the shipping position.
- 4. The display indicates "Please Power Off". Switch off the power. Do not switch on again until the machine is in its new location. When the power is switched back on, the head will automatically move away from the shipping position.

SECTION 2

PROGRAMMING, TESTING, AND PRINTING REPORTS

SECTION 2. PROGRAMMING, TESTING, AND PRINTING REPORTS

| 2-1. Operation Panel | 2-1 |
|--|------|
| 2-2. User Level Programming | 2-5 |
| 2-2-1. Function List | 2-5 |
| 2-2-2. Others | 2-13 |
| 1. Multicopy Mode | 2-13 |
| 2. Keystroke Programs | 2-13 |
| 2-3. Service Level Functions | 2-14 |
| 2-3-1. Function List | 2-14 |
| 2-3-2. Entering and Exiting Service Mode | 2-18 |
| 2-3-3. Bit Switches - Function 01 | 2-19 |
| 2-3-4. CCU - Function 02 | 2-20 |
| 1. G3 CCU Test Mode | 2-20 |
| 2. G3 Dump List 1 | 2-22 |
| 3. G3 Dump List 2 | 2-22 |
| 4. NCU Parameter Programming | 2-23 |
| 2-3-5. RAM - Function 03 | 2-24 |
| 1. RAM Read/Write | 2-24 |
| 2. Memory Dump List | 2-25 |
| 3. Hard Disk Dump | 2-26 |
| G3 CCU Handshake Logging Dump List | 2-27 |
| 5. SPU Handshake Logging Dump List | 2-27 |
| 6. Error Code Logging Dump List | 2-28 |
| 7. Multicopy | 2-28 |
| 8. Counter Check | 2-29 |
| 9. Charge Control | 2-29 |
| 2-3-6. Service Station Number - Function 04. | 2-30 |
| 2-3-7. Counter Check - Function 05 | 2-30 |

| 2-3-8. Service Monitor Report Printing - |
|---|
| Function 06 |
| 2-3-9. Parameter List Printing - Function 07 2-31 |
| 2-3-10. Serial Number Programming - |
| Function 08 2-32 |
| 2-3-11. Tests - Function 09 |
| 1. Printer Tests |
| 2. Fluorescent Lamp Lighting 2-33 |
| 3. SPU Reset |
| 4. Operation Panel Test |
| 5. RAM Test |
| 6. DCR Test |
| 7. ADF Mechanism Test 2-36 |
| 8. SPU Test Menu 2-37 |
| 9. Hard Disk Test 2-37 |
| 2-3-12. Printer Status - Function 14 2-38 |
| 2-3-13. Transmission Status Report - |
| Function 15 |
| 2-3-14. G4 CCU Parameters - Function 16 2-42 |
| 2-3-15. System Data List - Function 17 2-42 |
| 2-3-16. Hard Disk Shipping Position - |
| Function 18 2-42 |
| 2-3-17. Dedicated Transmission Parameters 2-43 |
| 2-3-18. Back to Back Test |
| 2-3-19. Machine Reset |
| |

| 2-4. Bit Switches | 2-47 |
|-------------------------------------|-------|
| 1. SCU - Factory Settings | 2-47 |
| 2. SCU - Bit Switch Tables | 2-49 |
| 3. G3 CCU - Factory Settings | 2-85 |
| 4. G3 CCU - Bit Switch Tables | 2-87 |
| 2-5. NCU Parameters | 2-112 |
| 2-6. Useful RAM Addresses | 2-115 |
| Redialling | 2-115 |
| Charge Control Parameters | 2-115 |
| Charge Control Report Printout Date | 2-116 |



1. Indicators

Transmitting Indicator Lights when the machine is sending a fax message.

Receiving Indicator Lights when the machine is receiving a fax message.

Storing Indicator Lights when the machine is storing a fax message to the hard disk.

Confidential File Indicator Lights when a confidential message has been received.

Receive File Indicator

Lights when a message was received but could not be printed because the printer was out of order (copy jam, no toner, or no paper).

Memory Full Indicator Blinks when the remaining memory space falls below 5%, and lights when there is no more space on the hard disk.

Line Fail Indicator Blinks when transmission fails.

Call Service Indicator Blinks when the machine diagnostics detect a problem that requires service. Clear Original Indicator Blinks when a document has jammed in the scanner.

Clear Copy Indicator Blinks when paper has jammed in the printer.

Add Paper 1 Indicator Blinks when the upper cassette is almost empty, and lights when it is empty.

Add Paper 2 Indicator Blinks when the lower cassette is almost empty, and lights when it is empty.

Add Toner Indicator Blinks when the toner cartridge is almost empty, and lights when it is empty.

Toner Collection Indicator Blinks when the toner collection tank is almost full, and lights when it is full.

Close Cover Indicator Blinks when a cover is open.

Replace Master Indicator Blinks when it is time to replace the master unit.

2. Character Display

Displays prompts, status, warnings, and selected modes.

3. Power Indicator

Lights when the power switch is on and when power is supplied to the machine.

4. User Function Keys

Each of these keys (except F6) can be programmed to execute a function or option during programming or communication. Note that F6 is only used with keystroke programs.

5. Function Key

Press this key to use one of the user or service programming functions, or to return the machine to standby during programming.

6. Yes/No Keys

Use these to answer questions on the character display.

7. Scroll Key

When an arrow is displayed on the character display, use this key to access the options, items, or functions indicated by this arrow. Also use it to shift the cursor when programming or editing an item on the display.

8. Selector Keys

Digital and Analog Indicators and Key

When dialling, press this key to light the indicator that corresponds with the type of network that will be used for dialling. The Digital setting is only available if you have installed the optional G4 interface.

Halftone Indicator and Key If you are transmitting a photograph, press the key to light the Halftone indicator.

Contrast Indicators and Key

The indicator that is lit shows the contrast that is now selected. Press the key if you wish to change the setting.

Resolution Indicators and Key

The indicator that is lit shows the resolution that is now selected. Press the key if you wish to change the setting.

Memory Indicator and Key

If the indicator is lit, the document will be stored to the hard disk before it is transmitted. If it is not lit, the document will be sent immediately, without being stored. Press the key if you wish to change the setting.

Copy Key

Press this key to copy the page(s) now in the feeder. You can do this to check whether your contrast, resolution, and halftone settings are appropriate.

9. Quick Dial Keys

You can program each of these to dial a number, a group of numbers, or enter a sequence of numbers and settings, with just one touch. You can also use these keys to enter and edit labels, such as the RTI, TTI, and CSI.

10. Keys

Speed Dial Key

Press this when you wish to dial using a Speed Dial Code.

Voice Request/On Hook Dial Indicator and Key Press this key during fax communication if you wish to talk to the person at the other end on the same call. Also, to make a phone call, press this key then dial on the ten-key pad. There is no need to pick up the handset during dialling.

Pause Key

When entering a telephone number at the ten-key pad, press this key when you need to enter a pause.

Redial Key

Press this key when you wish to redial the last number that was dialled.

Clear Key

This is used during programming to clear the last character entered, or to clear the character at the cursor, depending on the mode in use.

11. Ten-key Pad

Acts as a telephone keypad. Also used for entering other numbers, such as Speed Dial Codes, depending on the mode in use.

12. Stop Key

Press this to stop the machine during communication and return it to standby.

13. Start Key Press this to start transmission.

2-2-1. Function List

To select a function, press the Function key, then enter the number at the ten key pad. The functions are explained very briefly below. For full details, see the Operator's Manual.

| - | | |
|----|-----------------------------------|---|
| No | Function | Details |
| 10 | Function List | This displays a menu of functions 11 to 14. |
| 11 | Confidential Transmis- sion | Use this function to send a confidential message. This function is not used in W. Germany. |
| 12 | Secured Polling Trans- mission | Use polling transmission to store a message on the hard disk for another fax terminal to pick up. If this type of polling is used, the other end's Polling ID code must be the same as this machine's. |
| 13 | Free Polling Transmis- sion | This is like function 12, except that the Polling ID is not checked. |
| 14 | Polling Reception | Use this function to pick up a fax message that has been stored for polling transmission in another terminal. |
| 30 | Printing a confidential message | To print the message, enter the password then press Start. Note that if the sender has over-ridden the machine's confidential ID, the message will not be printed. In this case, contact the sender. This function is not used in W. Germany. |

| No | Function | Details |
|----|---|---|
| 40 | Function List | Displays a list of functions 41 to 45 |
| 41 | Changing the contents of a stored memory file | Using this function, you can add or remove an address from a memory or polling file, or change the time when the communica- tion is scheduled to start, or you can delete the file altogether. You can also print out the contents of a message that has been stored for polling or memory transmission. |
| 42 | Checking stored memory files | Use this to check whether the messages (and polling operations) stored in the memory have been transmitted successfully. |
| 43 | Displaying the remain- ing memory space | Use this to check how much space is remaining on the hard disk. |
| 44 | Forwarding a sub- stitute reception | When printer supplies have run out, use this to send any non-con- fidential receptions on to another fax machine. Dial the number, then press Yes, then Start. |
| 45 | Forwarding a confiden- tial reception | This is the same as for function 44, except that this is used for for- warding confidential messages. Before dialling the number, the confidential ID must be entered. This function is not used in W. Ger- many. |

| No | Function | Details |
|----|---|--|
| 50 | Function List | Displays a list of functions 51 to 57. |
| 51 | Programming Speed Dial | Enter the two-digit code that you wish to program, then press Yes. Press the line selector key to select either Analog or Digital. Enter the number, then press Yes. Press Yes twice more then press No to start to enter another Speed Dial Code. |
| 52 | Programming Quick Dial Keys | Press the key that you wish to program, then press Yes. The proce- dure from this point is the same as for Speed Dial Codes. |
| 53 | Programming Groups | Enter the group number that you wish to program, then press Yes. Press the Quick Dial Key that you wish to store the group in (to select this group during dialling, you will press this key). Type in a label for the group, then press Yes. Press 1. Store numbers in the group: first, select the line type (Analog or Digital), then enter the number, then press Yes. Press Function when you have finished with the group. |
| 54 | Labelling or Erasing a Keystroke Program | Use this function to label or erase a keystroke program. Press the key that contains the program. To label the program, press 1, type in the label, then press Yes. To erase the program, press 2 then Yes. |

To store a keystroke program, see page 2-13.

| No | Function | Details |
|----|--|---|
| 55 | Programming the User Function Keys | Keys F1 to F5 can be programmed as user function keys. F6 is not programmable; it is used for storing keystroke programs. Quick Dial Keys can also be programmed as user function keys. Press the key that you wish to program, then press Yes. Enter the two- digit code that corresponds to the function that you wish to pro- gram into this key (see the Operator's Manual for a full list of codes). Then press Yes. |
| 56 | Programming Speed Dial #1 | Enter the three-digit code (from 000 to 999) that you wish to pro- gram. Then proceed as for Programming Speed Dial (Function 51). |
| 57 | Programming Speed Dial #2 | Enter the three-digit code (from 000 to 899) that you wish to pro- gram. Then proceed as for Programming Speed Dial (Function 51). |
| 60 | Function List | Displays a list of functions 61 to 72 |
| 61 | Printing the Journal | The Journal contains information on the most recent communica- tions. Press Start to print the Journal. |
| 62 | Printing the File List Report | This report lists information on all files (polling and memory) still on the hard disk. Press Start to print the report. |
| 63 | Printing the Depart- ment Code List | This report lists all department codes that have been programmed with function 96. |

| No | Function | Details |
|----|--|--|
| 64 | Printing the Speed Dial List | This is a list of all telephone numbers stored as Speed Dial Codes. |
| 65 | Printing the Quick Dial List | This is a list of all telephone numbers stored as Quick Dial Keys. |
| 66 | Printing the Program List | This is a list of all the stored keystroke programs. |
| 67 | Printing the Group List | This is a list of all the groups. |
| 68 | Printing the Transmis- sion Status Report | This shows information on selected stored memory or polling operations. You can either list information on a particular file, or you can list information on all files stored under a particular depart- ment code. Use the scroll key to select the desired method, then type in the file number or department code. Then, press Start. |
| 69 | Printing the Speed Dial #1 List | This is a list of all telephone numbers stored as Speed Dial #1 Codes. |
| 70 | Printing the Speed Dial #2 List | This is a list of all telephone numbers stored as Speed Dial #2 Codes. |
| 71 | Printing the User Func- tion Key List | This is a list of all the user function keys that have been programmed. |
| 72 | Printing the Charge Control Report | This lists the calls made by the machine and the line charges. |

| No | Function | Details |
|----|--|---|
| 80 | Entering initial setting mode | See page 1-27 for details. |
| 81 | Storing the country code, fax terminal's own telephone num- ber, and transfer sta- tion number | See pages 1-27 and 1-28 for details. You can also use this function as a starting point for running through all the initial settings. |
| 82 | Programming the poll- ing ID code | See page 1-29 for details. |
| 83 | Programming the con- fidential ID code | See page 1-29 for details. This function is not used in W. Germany. |
| 84 | Programming the RTI #1 and RTI #2 | See page 1-30 for details. |
| 85 | Programming the TTI #1 and TTI #2 | See page 1-31 for details. |
| 86 | Programming the CSI | See page 1-31 for details. This function is a service mode in W. Ger- many. |
| 87 | Programming the date and time | See page 1-32 for details. |

| No | Function | Details |
|----|--|--|
| 88 | Programming the reception mode and telephone line type | See page 1-33 for details. |
| 93 | Programming the heater on/off timer | This timer controls the on/off timing of the fusing lamp. The user can keep the fusing lamp off when absent; received faxes will be kept on the hard disk. The timer can be programmed differently for each day of the week. Type in the required on and off times for each day. Press # to change from AM to PM, or from PM to AM. Press the up arrow on the scroll key to change the day. |
| 94 | Switching the heater on/off | After entering this mode, the status of the fusing lamp is changed. This can be used to switch the fusing lamp on to print an urgent message in the middle of the night. If the printer is idle for five minutes at any time after using Function 94 to switch the lamp on, the lamp switches off automatically, or the user can use Function 94 to switch the fusing lamp back off again. |
| 95 | Adjusting the speaker volume | First adjust the transmission mode monitor - use the left and right arrows of the scroll key to adjust the volume, and to check the volume, press Start. Press Yes to store the volume. Then repeat the procedure for the voice message monitor. |
| 96 | Programming depart- ment codes | Enter the department code that you wish to register, then press Yes. |

| No | Function | Details |
|----|---|--|
| 97 | Checking the counters | The tx, rx, scan, and print counters are displayed. Press Function after viewing the counters. |
| 98 | Storing the voice mes- sage, playing back the voice message, and switching voice mes- sage on/off | To store a voice message, press 1, pick up the handset, press Start, and speak. Press Stop when you have finished. To play back the voice message, press 2. The current on/off setting is high- lighted on the bottom right of the screen. To change the setting, press 3. |
| 99 | Master belt rotation counter reset | After installing a new master belt, use this function. Press Yes then Function to reset the counter. |

2-2-2. Others

1. Multicopy Mode

You can use the machine to make up to 99 copies of an original.

Place the document in the feeder, press Copy, type in the number of copies that you need, use the scroll key to select the required copy paper size, then press Start.

2. Keystroke Programs

If the user regularly transmits to or polls a particular destination or set of destinations using the same features, a lot of repetitive keypad operation can be saved by storing the settings as a keystroke program.

- 1. Place a sheet of paper in the feeder (unless you are making a polling reception program).
- 2. Press F6.
- 3. Press the key that you wish to store the program in.
- Select all required settings (such as contrast), features (such as Send Later), options (such as ID Transmission), and destinations.
- 5. Press Start.
- 6. Press F6 to store the program (or press Stop if there was an error).
- 7. Remove the paper from the feeder.

2-3-1. Function List

| No | Function | Details |
|----|--------------|--|
| 01 | Bit Switches | Use this function to change a bit switch setting. See page 2-19. |
| 02 | CCU | 0: G3 test - Use this to test tone generation. See page 2-20. 1: G3 dump 1 - Use this to print a protocol dump list for communication troubleshooting. Forward the printout to Ricoh Technical Services for assistance. See page 2-22. 2: G3 dump 2 - Use this to print a table of recent software commands. Send this list to Ricoh Technical Services if there is a communication problem. See page 2-22. 3: NCU data - Use this to adjust NCU parameters for ringing detection and auto-dialling. See page 2-23. |
| 03 | RAM | 0: RAM read/write - Use this to display the contents of a RAM address, and to change the data if necessary. This function cannot be used to rewrite remote terminal RAM. See page 2-24. 1: Memory dump - Use this to print a table of RAM address contents. See page 2-25. 2: Hard disk dump - This function is intended to help find problems with missing files. With the help of Ricoh Technical Services, use it to print the contents of a hard disk sector in hex code. This function is unlikely to be practical in the field. See p. 2-26. Continued on the next page |

| No | Function | Details |
|----|------------------------|--|
| 03 | RAM (continued) | 3: G3 CCU Handshake List - Use this to print a table of software commands that recently passed between the SCU and the G3 CCU. Send this list to Ricoh Technical Services if there is an unsolvable hardware or communication problem. See page 2-27. 4: SPU Handshake List - Use this to print a table of software commands that recently passed between the SCU and the SPU. Send this list to Ricoh Technical Services if there is an unsolvable hardware problem. See page 2-27. 5: Error Code Logging - Send this list to Ricoh Technical Services if the machine is defective and cannot be repaired. See page 2-28. 6: Multicopy - Use this to determine how many copies of each received page is printed. See page 2-28. Bit 1 of SCU bit switch 18 must be set to 1 for this feature to work. 7: Counter Check - Use this to check and/or alter the Toner End, Toner Full, and Master counters. See page 2-29. 9: Charge Control - Use this to enter charge control parameters. See section 1-8. |
| 04 | Service Station Number | Use this to program the service station number. The machine auto- matically calls this number when there is an Auto Service Call con- dition. See page 2-30. |
| 05 | Counter Check | Use this to check and/or alter the Scan, Print, Tx, and Rx counters. See page 2-30. |
| 06 | Service Monitor Report | This report lists the most recent error codes and gives information on the most recent communications that experienced errors. See page 2-31. |

| No | Function | Details |
|----|----------------|---|
| 07 | Parameter List | This report lists information such as bit switch settings and current counter values. See page 2-31. |
| 08 | Serial Number | Use this to program the machine's serial number. This number is used by the Auto Service Call administration system. See page 2-32. |
| 09 | Tests | 0: Printer test patterns. See page 2-32. 1: Scanner - 0: Fluorescent lamp lighting. See page 2-33. -1: SPU Reset - Use this to reset the machine after clearing an Auto Service Call condition. See p. 2-34 2: Operation panel test - Use this to check the operation of the operation panel LEDs. See page 2-34. 3: RAM test - Use this to test the function of the various RAM chips inside the machine. See page 2-35. Note that the tested RAM will be cleared. 4: DCR test - Use this to test the function of the data compression/reconstruction chips on the SCU. This function does not test the DCR chip on the VPU. See page 2-36. 5: ADF mechanism test - See page 2-36. 6: SPU tests - There are three tests to check motor operation, master home position detection, and charge corona operation. See page 2-37. 7: Hard disk tests - Factory use only. Do not use. |
| | . | |

10 Not used

| No | Function | Details |
|----|---|--|
| 11 | Programming the CSI | W. Germany only. |
| 12 | Telephone line type selection | See page 1-32 for details. |
| 13 | Not used | |
| 14 | Printer Status | Use this to display the most recent printer error messages. See page 2-38. |
| 15 | Transmission Status Report | This report is similar to the user report of the same name, except that in the service mode, it lists the status of all files on the hard disk. See page 2-40. |
| 16 | G4 CCU Parameters | See the service manual for the Group 4 interface kit. |
| 17 | System Data List | This report contains software data. Pass this report to Ricoh Tech- nical Services if the machine malfunctions. See page 2-42. |
| 18 | Set Hard Disk to Ship- ping Position | If the machine is to be moved to a new location, do this function to move the hard disk head to the shipping position. See page 1-39. |

ENTERING SERVICE MODE Do the following procedure. 1. Make sure that JP19 is installed on the G3 NCU board. 2. Press Function then enter 80 at the keypad. 3. Enter 1988. 4. Press Yes. Page 1 of the service mode menu is now displayed.

EXITING SERVICE MODE

After finishing with the service mode, do the following.

- 1. Press Function to leave service mode and return the machine to standby.
- 2. Hold down the Stop key for about 10 seconds until the machine resets.

3. Remove JP19 from the G3 NCU if you wish to disable service mode.

2-3-3. Bit Switches - Function 01

- 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
- 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 01 at the ten-key pad.
- 3. Either:
 - Program SCU bit switches press 0.
 - Program G3 CCU bit switches press 1.
 - · Go back to the service mode menu press Yes.
- 4. Bit switch 01 is displayed. The default settings are on the top line. The current settings are on the bottom line, highlighted. Bit 7 is on the left end and bit 0 is on the right.

To increment the bit switch number, press the down arrow on the scroll key. To decrement, press the up arrow.

To change the setting of a bit switch, press the number of that bit on the ten-key pad. For example, to change bit 1, press 1.

- 5. Either:
 - Program another bit switch of the same type go to step 4.
 - Program a different type of bit switch or finish programming bit switches press Yes and go to step 3.
- 6. Press Function if all service mode operations have been finished.

2-3-4. CCU - Function 02

1. G3 CCU Test Mode

- 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
- 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 02 at the ten-key pad.
- 3. When the CCU, test menu is displayed, press 0.
- 4. On the LCD, the highlighted number on the left indicates the tone currently selected. The name of the tone is given in the bottom right corner. Press the down arrow to decrement the number or the up arrow to increment it.
- 5. When the correct tone is displayed, press Start.
- 6. When you have finished with the tone, press Stop.
- 7. Either:
 - Test another tone go to step 4.
 - Go back to the CCU test menu press Yes. (Press Yes once more to go back to the service mode menu.)
- 8. Press Function when all service mode operations have been finished.

A list of the tones and their corresponding three-digit codes follows.
| 00 Tone 2100 Hz | 15 DTMF 770 Hz | 30 DTMF 7 | 42 ITA 390-470 |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|----------------|
| 01 G2 carrier | 16 DTMF 852 Hz | 31 DTMF 8 | 43 AUS 380-510 |
| 02 G3 9600 bps | 17 DTMF 941 Hz | 32 DTMF 9 | 44 BEL 405-470 |
| 03 V.21 1650 Hz | 18 DTMF 1209 Hz | 33 DTMF * | 45 DEN 340-510 |
| 04 V.21 1850 Hz | 19 DTMF 1336 Hz | 34 DTMF # | 46 FIN 315-535 |
| 05 Tone 462 Hz | 20 DTMF 1477 Hz | 35 330 Hz det. | 47 IRE 200-450 |
| 06 Tone 1100 Hz | 21 DTMF 1633 Hz | (Not used) | 48 NOR 340-510 |
| 07 Tone 1300 Hz | 22 ARQ 330 Hz | 27 Dial Brook | 49 SWE 340-510 |
| 08 Tone 1650 Hz | (Not used) | 37 Diai break | 50 SWI 340-570 |
| 09 Tone 1850 Hz | 23 DTMF 0 | 38 Codec 400 Hz (Not used) | 51 NET 80-560 |
| 10 G1 carrier | 25 DTMF 2 | 39 Codec 1 kHz (Not used) | |
| 11 G3 2400 bps | | European Diel Tene | |
| 12 G3 4800 bps | 26 DTMF 3 | Detection Frequencies | |
| 13 G3 7200 bps | 27 DIMF 4 | 40 GM 370-500 | |
| 14 DTMF 697 Hz | 28 DTMF 5 | 41 UK 320-480 | |
| | 29 DTM F 6 | | |

- 2. G3 Dump List 1
 - 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
 - 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 02 at the ten-key pad.
 - 3. When the CCU test menu is displayed, press 1.
 - 4. Press Start to print the list. A list of the protocol signals that the machine transmitted and received most recently is printed.
- 3. G3 Dump List 2
 - 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
 - 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 02 at the ten-key pad.
 - 3. When the CCU test menu is displayed, press 2.
 - 4. Press Start to print the list. A table of software commands is printed. Pass this list on to Ricoh Technical Services.

4. NCU Parameter Programming

- 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
- 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, press 02.
- 3. When the CCU test menu is displayed, press 3.
- 4. The data stored in NCU parameter 1 is displayed. Press the up arrow on the scroll key to increment the parameter number, or press the down arrow to decrement it.
- 5. When the correct parameter number is displayed, type in the new parameter. Press No if you make a mistake.
- 6. Either:
 - Program another parameter go to step 4.
 - Press Yes to return to the CCU test menu. Press Yes again to return to the service mode menu.
- 7. Press Function if all service mode operations have been finished.

2-3-5. RAM - Function 03

1. RAM Read/Write

- 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
- 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 03 at the ten-key pad.
- 3. When the RAM menu is displayed, press 0.
- 4. Type the address that you wish to change. If you make a mistake, retype the address.
- 5. Press the right arrow on the scroll key to move the cursor to the data.
- 6. Type in the new data in hexadecimal format.
- 7. Either:
 - If you want to change data in another address, press the left arrow on the scroll key to move the cursor back to the address go to step 4.
 - Press Yes to go back to the RAM menu (press Yes once again to go back to the service mode menu).
- 8. Press Function when all service mode operations have been finished.

2. Memory Dump List

- 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
- 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 03 at the ten-key pad.
- 3. When the RAM menu is displayed, press 1.
- 4. Type the first four digits of the start address (the last two digits is always fixed at 00). The cursor automatically moves to the end address.
- 5. Type in the first four digits of the end address (the last two digits is always fixed at FF).
- 6. If you made an error, press Yes. Go back to step 3.
- 7. Press Start. The list is printed and the service mode menu is displayed.
- 8. Press Function if all service mode operations have been finished.

3. Hard Disk Dump

If there is a missing file on the hard disk or another hard disk problem, and the hard disk maintenance routines did not help, the best thing to do is replace the hard disk, or the SPU or SCU. However, some information can be obtained by making a hard disk dump. To do this requires co-ordination with Ricoh Technical Services. Tell them the following:

- · How many files remain on the disk.
- What file numbers are missing
- · What other good files remain on the disk (make a File List)

Then in a few days, Ricoh Technical Services should inform which cylinder and block number to enter. Print the report and send it to Ricoh Technical Services for analysis.

- 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
- 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 03 at the ten-key pad.
- 3. When the RAM menu is displayed, press 2.
- 4. Enter the cylinder number and block number of interest. If you make an error, press Yes and go to step 3.
- 5. Press Start. The dump list is printed.
- 6. Press Function if all service mode operations have been finished.

- 4. G3 CCU Handshake Logging Dump List
 - 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
 - 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 03 at the ten-key pad.
 - 3. When the RAM menu is displayed, press 3 then press Start. The list is printed. Pass the list on to Ricoh technical services.
- 5. SPU Handshake Logging Dump List
 - 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
 - 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 03 at the ten-key pad.
 - 3. When the RAM menu is displayed, press 4 then press Start. The list is printed. Pass the list on to Ricoh technical services.

- 6. Error Code Logging Dump List
 - 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
 - 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 03 at the ten-key pad.
 - 3. When the RAM menu is displayed, press 5.
 - 4. Press Start. The list is printed. Pass the list on to Ricoh technical services.
- 7. Multicopy

Before using this function set bit 1 of SCU bit switch 18 to 1, and keep it at 1 after the end of programming.

- 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
- 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 03 at the ten-key pad.
- 3. When the RAM menu is displayed, press 6.
- 4. Type in the number of copies of each received page that the user wishes to be printed (maximum 19).
- 5. Press Yes to store the value. The RAM menu is displayed.
- 6. Press Function if all service mode operations have been finished.

8. Counter Check

- 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
- 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 03 at the ten-key pad.
- 3. When the RAM menu is displayed, press 7.
- 4. The Toner End, Toner Full, and Master counters are displayed. They can be changed by typing in the new value at the keypad. Note that the Toner End and Toner Full counters can only be changed if they are not at zero.

The Toner End counter starts the first time the toner end sensor is activated. The Toner Full counter starts the first time the toner overflow sensor is activated. The Master counter starts at 0 when the counter is reset with user function 99 when a new master unit is installed.

- 5. Press Yes after viewing the counters. The RAM menu is displayed.
- 6. Press Function if all service mode operations have been finished.

9. Charge Control

See section 1-8.

2-3-6. Service Station Number - Function 04

- 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
- 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 04 at the ten-key pad.
- 3. Type in the service station telephone number. If you make an error, press Clear (erases the last digit) or No (erases the complete number).
- 4. Press Yes to store the number.
- 5. Type in the second service station number (this will be dialled if the first one is still busy after all redialling attempts).
- 6. Press Yes to store the number. The service mode menu will be displayed.
- 7. Press Function if all service mode operations have been finished.
- 2-3-7. Counter Check Function 05

Reset these counters to zero when installing the machine at a new location.

- 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
- 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 05 at the ten-key pad.
- 3. The Scan, Print, Tx, and Rx counters are displayed. They can be changed by typing in the new value at the keypad.
- 4. Press Yes after viewing. Then press Function if all service mode operations have been finished.

2-3-8. Service Monitor Report Printing - Function 06

- 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
- 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 06 at the ten-key pad.
- 3. To print the report, press Start.
- 4. Press Function if all service mode operations have been finished.
- 2-3-9. Parameter List Printing Function 07
 - 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
 - 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 07 at the ten-key pad.
 - 3. To print the report, press Start.
 - 4. Press Function if all service mode operations have been finished.

- 2-3-10. Serial Number Programming Function 08
 - 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
 - 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 08 at the ten-key pad.
 - 3. The serial number is displayed. If it is correct, go to step 5.
 - 4. If it is not correct, type in the correct one using the ten-key pad (digits) and the Quick Dial keys (letters). If you make a mistake, press Clear (erases last digit only) or No (erases the entire number).
 - 5. Press Yes to store the number.
 - 6. Press Function if all service mode operations have been finished.
- 2-3-11. Tests Function 09
- 1. Printer Tests
 - 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
 - 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 09 at the ten-key pad.
 - 3. The test menu is displayed. Press 0.

Continued on the next page

4. A list of options is displayed.

| Test pattern - | Press 0 then Start |
|---|--------------------|
| Thin diagonal lines - | Press 1 then Start |
| Thick diagonal lines - | Press 2 then Start |
| All black - | Press 3 then Start |
| Horizontal and vertical line patterns - | Press 4 then Start |

- 5. Either:
 - Print another pattern go to step 4.
 - Press Yes to return to the test menu (press Yes once more to return to the service mode menu).
- 6. Press Function if all service mode operations have been finished.
- 2. Fluorescent Lamp Lighting
 - 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
 - 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 09 at the ten-key pad.
 - 3. The test menu is displayed. Press 1.
 - 4. Press 0 to light the lamps.
 - 5. Press Yes to turn the lamps off again. The test menu is displayed.
 - 6. Press Function if all service mode operations have been finished.

3. SPU Reset

Use this function to reset the machine after clearing an Auto Service Call condition.

- 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
- 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 09 at the ten-key pad.
- 3. The test menu is displayed. Press 1.
- 4. Press 1. The SPU software resets and the machine returns to standby. No data is erased.
- 4. Operation Panel Test
 - 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
 - 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 09 at the ten-key pad.
 - 3. The test menu is displayed. Press 2.
 - 4. The LEDs on the operation panel light up. Press Yes to stop the display. The test mode is displayed.
 - 5. Press Function if all service mode operations have been finished.

5. RAM Test

If the machine software crashes (for example, communication or printing fails even though the mechanisms are in good working order), a RAM may be defective. There are 5 RAM tests, as follows. After testing, the tested RAM is cleared and reset; if the RAM normally contains system parameters, these are loaded back in from the hard disk.

CAUTION: If the MBU RAM is tested, the hard disk bad sector information must be reprogrammed. See "Installation - Hard Disk Initialization" for details. There is no need to reformat the hard disk.

- 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
- 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 09 at the ten-key pad.
- 3. The test menu is displayed. Press 3.
- 4. A list of options is displayed.
 Press 0 then Start

 Line buffer test (SCU) Press 0 then Start

 Page memory test (SPU) Press 1 then Start

 System RAM test (MBU) Press 2 then Start

 FIFO and ECM memory test (G3 CCU) Press 3 then Start

 Group 4 HDLC frame buffer test (G4 CCU) Press 4 then Start

 Each test takes up to 2 or 3 minutes. All storage locations in the RAM are tested. At the end of the test, if

 there were no errors, the system resets and the machine returns to standby mode. If there is a fault, an

 alarm sounds; press Stop, then replace the defective PCB.

6. DCR Test

Do this test if received images are abnormal (for example, bottom half of the page is missing, skewed printout, missing data, blank page). The type of compression/reconstruction to be tested is selected by bits 6 and 7 of SCU bit switch 15.

- 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
- 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 09 at the ten-key pad.
- 3. The test menu is displayed. Press 4.
- 4. Press Start. Two pages of diagonal stripes should be printed. If the diagonals are disjointed, change the SCU.

Note: If received images at the other end are still bad, try replacing the VPU.

- 5. The machine returns to the test menu. Press Function if all service mode operations have been finished.
- 7. ADF Mechanism Test
 - 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
 - 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 09 at the ten-key pad.
 - 3. The test menu is displayed. Press 5.
 - 4. Place a document in the ADF then press Start. The document is fed (and stamped if SCU bit switch 07 bit 1 is at 1).

5. Press Function if all service mode operations have been finished.

8. SPU Test Menu

- 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
- 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 09 at the ten-key pad.
- 3. The test menu is displayed. Press 6.
- 4. A list of options is displayed.

Test the motors (the main motor, tx motor, pentagonal mirror motor, master belt drive motor, and lower paper feed motor are all turned on at the same time) - Press 0 then Start Test the charge corona (it will switch on after master home position is detected) - Press 1 then Start Test the charge corona (it will switch on a set interval after you press Start; home position detection is not tested) - Press 2 then Start

- 5. Press Stop to end the test.
- 6. Either:
 - Do another test go to step 4.
 - Press Yes to return to the test menu (press Yes once more to return to the service mode menu).
- 7. Press Function if all service mode operations have been finished.
- 9. Hard Disk Test

This is for factory use only.

Functions 11 and 12 are explained in section 1-7.

2-3-12. Printer Status - Function 14

- 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
- 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 14 at the ten-key pad.
- 3. The current errors are displayed. Press the up and down arrows on the scroll key to scroll through the messages.
- 4. When you have finished, press Yes to return to the service mode menu.
- 5. Press Function if all service mode operations have been finished.

The error messages are as shown on the next page; a brief explanation follows each one. See Section 5 (Troubleshooting) for details on solving problems.

| Message | Explanation |
|---------------|---|
| LD_POWER_FAIL | The same as Auto Service Call condition "LD Power Lock Fail" |
| HEATER_DOWN | The same as Auto Service Call condition "Heater Control Fail" |
| CHARGER_DOWN | The same as Auto Service Call condition "Charger Current Leak" |
| HMC_LDS_FAIL | The same as Auto Service Call condition "LDS Handshake Fail" |
| UIB_HDS_ERR | The same as Auto Service Call condition "UIB Handshake Fail" |
| LIB_HDS_ERR | The same as Auto Service Call condition "LIB Handshake Fail" |
| LD_ILOC_FAIL | Error code 9-13 |
| P_DOOR_OPEN | One of the printer covers is open (error code 9-12). |
| P_FEED_JAM | Error code 9-07 |
| P_PLOT_JAM | Error code 9-08 |
| P_EJECT_JAM | Error code 9-09 |
| PM_LOCK_FAIL | The same as Auto Service Call condition "Polygon Motor Fail" |
| MM_LOCK_FAIL | The same as Auto Service Call condition "Main Motor Lock Fail" |
| HP_SENSE_FAIL | The same as Auto Service Call condition "Home Position Fail" |
| HEATER_NT_RDY | Printing impossible due to a jam, no paper, no toner, night timer in operation, |
| | or an Auto Service Call condition |
| TONER_NREND | The toner is almost used up. |
| TONER_NRFULL | The toner overflow sensor has been activated. |
| TONER_END | The toner is all used up (error code 9-10). |
| TONER_FULL | The toner collection tank must be replaced (error code 9-01). |
| OBM_OVER | The master belt lifetime counter has run out; the same as |
| | Auto Service Call condition "Master Unit Replacement Required" |
| OBM_NROVER | The master belt lifetime counter has almost run out. |
| PAPER1_END | The upper cassette ran out of paper. |
| PAPER1_NREND | The upper cassette almost ran out of paper. |
| PAPER2_END | The lower cassette ran out of paper. |
| PAPER2_NREND | The lower cassette almost ran out of paper. |

- 2-3-13. Transmission Status Report Function 15
 - 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
 - 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 15 at the ten-key pad.
 - 3. Press Start to print the report. A report of the status of all files on the hard disk is printed. The machine then returns to the service mode menu.
 - 4. Press Function if all service mode operations have been finished.

When this report is printed out in the service mode, two-digit codes may appear in the Remote Terminal Identification (Address) column. Either one or two of these codes may appear; the first code is known as the Job Code, and the second one is called the Job Sub-code. The meaning of these codes is described in the following tables.

| Job Code | Definition | Job Sub- | Definition |
|----------|--------------------|---------------|---|
| | | code | |
| 01 | Report/list output | See the table | on the following page. |
| 02 | Video data output | 02 | Printing the contents of a file (function 42) |
| | | 07 | Substitute reception printout |
| | | 08 | Confidential reception printout |
| | | 17 | Transfer result report printout when acting |
| | | | as a broadcasting station, and when the |
| | | | line to the transfer requester is busy |
| 03 | Copy mode | There are no | job sub-codes. |
| 18 | Multicopy mode | | |
| 19 | Test mode | 00: DCR test, | 01: ADF test |

| Job Sub- | Definition | Job Sub- | Definition |
|----------|--|----------|--|
| 01 | Not used | 20 | G4CCU system parameter list |
| 02 | Department code list | 21 | Transmission status report (service mode) |
| 03 | Service monitor report | 22 | Polling clear report |
| 04 | File list | 23 | Polling reserve report |
| 05 | Journal | 24 | Hard disk dump list |
| 06 | Charge control report (Europe/Asia only) | 25 | Test pattern |
| 07 | Memory report | 26 | Auto service call transmission |
| 08 | Memory transmission report | 27 | Mode change report |
| 09 | Error report | 28 | Memory transmission report (for failed transmission) |
| 10 | Transfer result report | 29 | Polling reception report, or transmission deadline (TRD) expiry report |
| 11 | Power failure report | 30 | Speed dial #1 list |
| 12 | Quick dial list | 31 | Speed dial #2 list |
| 13 | Group list | 32 | Memory transmission report (for success- ful transmission) |
| 14 | Speed dial list | 33 | Address label check printout (option when programming Quick or Speed Dial) |
| 15 | Program list | 34 | User function key list |
| 16 | RAM dump list | 35 | Disconnection recovery report (Group 4 only) |
| 17 | G4CCU dump list | 36 | Two-step transfer result report |
| 18 | G3CCU dump list | 37 | System data list |
| 19 | System parameter list | 38 | Polling reception result report |

Note: The items denoted by job sub-codes 07, 08, 09, 22, 23, and 29 may be printed on the report in English, instead of the codes themselves.

2-3-14. G4 CCU Parameters - Function 16

See the service manual for the Group 4 interface kit.

2-3-15. System Data List - Function 17

- 1. Enter the service mode. See page 2-18.
- 2. When the service mode menu is displayed, enter 17 at the ten-key pad.
- 3. Press Start to print the report. Pass the report on to Ricoh Technical Services.
- 4. Press Function if all service mode operations have been finished.
- 2-3-16. Hard Disk Shipping Position Function 18

This is only for use when moving the machine to a new location. See section 1-9.

2-3-17. Dedicated Transmission Parameters

Each destination programmed as a Quick Dial Key or Speed Dial Code can be given dedicated parameters (such as tx level) that will override the machine's settings when sending to that address. Consult a senior technician before changing any of these settings.

Each Quick Dial and Speed Dial has a number of switches containing these dedicated parameters. They will be explained after the procedure.

Procedure

- 1. Set bit 5 of SCU bit switch 21 to 1. See page 2-19 for how to program bit switches. Then press Function to return the machine to standby.
- 2. Press the Function key, enter 51 (Speed Dial), 52 (Quick Dial), 56 (Speed Dial #1) or 57 (Speed Dial #2) at the keypad.
- 3. Enter the required Speed Dial Code at the keypad or press the required Quick Dial Key (press No if you entered the wrong code or pressed the wrong key). Then press Yes three times.
- 4. The option display should now be visible. Press 8 at the keypad to store dedicated tx parameters.
- 5. The display now shows the settings for switch no. 1. The highlighted zone shows the current settings of tx parameter switch number 1. Bit 7 is at the left end of the display, and bit 0 is at the right.
- 6. To change the setting of a bit, press the key on the ten key pad that corresponds to that bit. For example, to change bit 3, press 3.
- 7. If the settings of tx parameter switch number 1 are correct, press the down arrow on the scroll key to move to the next switch.

- 8. The settings of switch number 2 are now displayed. Change the settings of this and any of the other tx parameter switches as shown in steps 5, 6, and 7.
- 9. After all parameters for this address have been programmed, press Yes to return to the option display.
- 10. Press Yes.
- 11. Either:

To program parameters for another address, go back to step 3. To return to standby, press Function.

12. After finishing programming, set bit 5 of SCU bit switch 21 back to 0.

- Bit Assignment -

Switch number 1

Bits 0 to 4 - Not used

Bits 5 to 7 - Initial modem rate

Bit 7 6 5 Rate (bps) 0 1 0 2400 0 1 1 4800 1 0 0 7200 1 0 1 9600

Continued on the next page

Switch number 2

- Bit 0 ECM transmission
- Bit 1 Not used
- Bit 2 Short preamble
- Bit 3 Ricoh Group 3 protocol
- Bit 4 DIS detection
- Bits 5 and 6 Not used

- 0: Enabled 1: Disabled 0: First 1: Second (first DIS is ignored)
- Bit 7 Dedicated Parameters Disable/Enable
 - 0: Disabled transmissions to this remote terminal will use the parameters specified by the bit switches.

0: Enabled 1: Disabled

0: Enabled 1: Disabled

1: Enabled - the dedicated parameters in bytes 1 to 3 will be used.

Switch number 3

Bits 0 to 3 - Tx level

Bits 4 and 5 - Cable equalizer

used

| Bit | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | Level(- | dB) | Bit 5 4 dB |
|-----|---|----|----|----|---------|-----|-------------------|
| | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | 0 0 0 |
| | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | | 0 1 4 |
| | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 2 | | 1 0 8 |
| | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 3 | | 1 1 12 |
| | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 4 | | |
| | | | | | | | Bits 6 and 7 - No |
| | а | nd | so | on | until | | |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 15 | | |

2-3-18. Back to Back Test

- 1. Connect the machine to another fax terminal back to back (connect them directly, without using an exchange or any type of switching device).
- 2. Set bit 7 of G3CCU bit switch 40 to 1.
- 3. Place the other fax machine in back to back mode. For example, if it is another FAX7000L, set bit 7 of G3CCU bit switch 40 to 1. See the machine's field service manual for details.
- 4. Place a document in the feeder of one of the machines and press Start on that machine.
- 5. Press Start on the other machine.
- 6. Check that the document is transmitted correctly.
- 7. Repeat the test, but send the document from the other machine.
- 8. After testing, reset bit 7 of G3CCU bit switch 40 to 0. Also, reset the other machine to normal operating mode.

Note: There is no need to use a battery to supply line power for the test.

2-3-19. Machine Reset

In most cases, if the system software crashes, the machine can be reset by holding down the Stop key for about 10 seconds. If that does not work, switch power off, wait a few seconds, then switch back on.

2-4. Bit Switches

WARNING Do not adjust a bit switch that is described as "Not used", as this may cause the machine to malfunction or to operate in a manner that is not accepted by local regulations. Such bits are for use only in other markets, such as Japan.

1. SCU - Factory Settings

The factory settings are shown in hexadecimal format. The first digit gives the settings of bits 7 to 4, with bit 7 as the most significant bit; the second digit gives the settings of bits 3 to 0, with bit 3 as the most significant bit. For example, a setting of 34 means that bits 5, 4, and 2 are set to 1, and the rest are at 0.

| | U. K. | Germany | Italy | France | Universal |
|---------|-------|---------|-------|--------|-----------|
| Bit Sw. | Hex | Hex | Hex | Hex | Hex |
| 1 | 05 | 05 | 05 | 05 | 05 |
| 2 | 05 | 05 | 05 | 05 | 05 |
| 3 | 06 | 06 | 06 | 06 | 06 |
| 4 | 07 | 07 | 07 | 07 | 07 |
| 5 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 |
| 6 | 0C | 0C | 0C | 0C | 0C |
| 7 | 00 | 40 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 8 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 9 | 40 | 00 | 40 | 40 | 40 |
| 10 | 07 | 07 | 07 | 07 | 07 |

Continued on the next page

| | U. K. | Germany | Italy | France | Universal |
|---------|-------|---------|-------|--------|-----------|
| Bit Sw. | Hex | Hex | Hex | Hex | Hex |
| 11 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 12 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 13 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 14 | 00 | F7 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 15 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 16 | 20 | 10 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 17 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 18 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 19 | 46 | 46 | 46 | 46 | 46 |
| 20 | 35 | 35 | 35 | 35 | 35 |
| 21 | 00 | 09 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 22 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 23 | 02 | 02 | 02 | 02 | 02 |
| 24 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 25 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 26 | 06 | 06 | 06 | 06 | 06 |
| 27 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 28 | 04 | 04 | 04 | 04 | 04 |
| 29 | 03 | 03 | 03 | 03 | 03 |
| 30 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 31 | 34 | 34 | 34 | 34 | 34 |
| 32 | 01 | 03 | 01 | 01 | 01 |

Blt switches 33 to 40: Factory settings are all 0.

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|------------------------------------|---|--|
| 0 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 1 | Smoothing of received images | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | If this bit is 0, faxes received in standard or detail mode will be smoothed to super-fine mode. |
| 2 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 3 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 4 | Maximum docu- ment length limit | 0: As specified by bit 5 1: No limit | If the user wishes to send very long documents, such as well logs, set this bit to 1. Otherwise, set this bit to 0 and adjust bit 5 to the required setting. |
| 5 | Maximum docu- ment length limit | 0: 600 mm [23.6"] 1: 1200 mm [47.2"] | If a page longer than this setting is scanned, a document jam will occur. This bit is ignored if bit 4 is 1. Note that if manual feed is in use, the limit is taken to be 1,200 mm regardless of the setting of this bit. |
| 6 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|------------------|-------------------------------|--------------|--|
| | Contrast threshold lev | vel (Darken) | |
| 0 1 2 3 | 0 (0) to 1 (15) 0 1 0 1 | | The threshold value can be between 0 and 15. The most sig- nificant bit is bit 3. For example, if bit 3 is 1 and the other bits are 0, the contrast threshold would be 8. Lower thresholds give a darker image. |
| 4 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|------------------|-------------------------------|------------|--|
| | Contrast threshold leve | I (Normal) | |
| 0 1 2 3 | 0 (0) to 1 (15) 0 1 0 1 | | The threshold value can be between 0 and 15. The most sig- nificant bit is bit 3. For example, if bit 3 is 1 and the other bits are 0, the contrast threshold would be 8. Lower thresholds give a darker image. |
| 4 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

SCU Bit Switch 04

| BIT | FUNCTION | N DATA | COMMENTS |
|---------------|----------------|----------------------|--|
| | Contrast thres | hold level (Lighten) | |
| 0 1 | 0 0 (0) to | 1 1 (15) | The threshold value can be between 0 and 15. The most sig- nificant bit is bit 3. For example, if bit 3 is 1 and the other bits |
| 2 | 0 | 1 | are 0, the contrast threshold would be 8. Lower thresholds |
| 3 | 0 | | give a darker image. |
| 4 to 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory settings. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|---|---------------------------|--|
| 0 | Default setting of the auto reduce op- tion | 0: On 1: Off | If auto reduce is on, the machine will reduce the data so that it will fit the paper in the remote terminal. If auto reduce is off, the data will not be reduced; data will be lost if the paper is not wide enough. For each transmission, auto reduce can be switched on/off with a user option setting, but after transmis- sion, the setting will always return to the default specified by this bit. |
| 1 | Reduction when the received page is longer than the copy paper | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | 0: If the received page is shorter than the copy paper by 5 mm, there is no reduction. If it is between 5 mm shorter than and x mm longer than the copy paper, reduction is done by deleting a few lines (x depends on bits 4 to 7 of SCU bit switch 26). If it is more than x mm longer than the copy paper, it is not reduced; however, it is printed on two sheets and treated as specified by the setting of bit 4 of SCU bit switch 05. 1: The data will not be reduced. However, in pages up to x mm longer than the copy paper, the excess portion (x) will not be printed. If it is longer than x mm longer than the copy paper, the page is printed on two sheets and treated in accordance with the setting of bit 4 of SCU bit switch 05. The value of x is determined in accordance with bits 0 to 3 of SCU bit switch 26. |
| 2 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

Continued on the next page

SCU Bit Switch 05 - Continued

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|--|------------------------------|--|
| 3 | Page separation mark | 0: Printed 1: Not printed | 0: If a received page has to be printed on two sheets (see bit 1), an "x" inside a small box is printed in the bottom right corner of the first sheet. This helps the user identify pages that have been split up. 1: No mark is printed at the bottom of the first sheet. |
| 4 | Repetition of data when the received page is longer than the copy paper | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | 0: The bottom 10 mm of the page is repeated at the top of the next page1: The next page continues from where the first page left off |
| 5 | Fusing lamp warm up time | 0: Standard 1: Short | 0: The fusing lamp is switched off when the machine is in standby mode; this is good for safety and energy conservation. However, a longer warm up time will be needed. 1: The fusing lamp stays at 170°C during standby mode, allowing quick printout. |
| 6 | Fusing lamp activa- tion timing | 0: Standard 1: Delayed | 0: The fusing lamp turns on immediately when any key is pressed. This allows for faster report printing. 1: The fusing lamp turns on only when a ringing signal is detected, the Copy key is pressed, or a report output command is generated. Use this setting if the user complains about noise from the printer fan, as fan usage will be reduced. |
| 7 | Night timer | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | If this bit is at 1, the night timer cannot be operated or programmed. This is an FTZ requirement. |

| BIT | F | UNCTIO | N DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|---|--------|------------|--|
| | Resolution default setting | | | |
| 0 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Setting | These bits state the default resolution setting. The machine's |
| 4 | 0 | 0 | Standard | resolution returns to this setting when power is switched on |
| I | 1 | 0 | Super Fine | If (1, 1) is selected a) the resolution will always reset to Stand- |
| | 1 | 1 | No default | ard if the power is switched off/on, b) on returning to standby, |
| | | | | the resolution will remain at the setting used for the transmis- |
| | | | | sion. |
| | Default resolution setting used for copy mode | | | |
| 2 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Setting | These bits state the resolution used when the user presses |
| | 0 | 0 | Standard | the Copy key. The machine will return to the standby default |
| 3 | 0 | 1 | Detail | setting after copying. If (1, 1) is selected, on returning to |
| | 1 | 0 | Super Fine | standby, the resolution will remain at the setting used for copy- |
| | 1 | 1 | No default | ing. |
| | Contrast default setting | | | |
| 4 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Setting | These bits state the default contrast setting. The machine's |
| | 0 | 0 | Normal | contrast returns to this setting when power is switched on and |
| 5 | 0 | 1 | Lighten | when the machine returns to standby after transmission. If |
| | 1 | 0 | Darken | (1, 1) is selected, a) the contrast will always reset to Normal if |
| | 1 | 1 | No default | the power is switched off/on, b) on returning to standby, the contrast will remain at the setting used for the transmission. |

Continued on the next page

SCU Bit Switch 06 - Continued

| BIT | F | UNCTIO | N DA ⁻ | COMMENTS |
|-----|-------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------|---|
| | Line type selection default setting | | | Ig |
| 6 | Bit 7 0 | Bit 6 0 | Setting Analog | These bits state the default line type setting. The line type returns to this setting when power is switched on and when |
| 7 | 0 1 1 | 1 0 1 | Not used Digital No default | the machine returns to standby after transmission. If (1, 1) is selected, a) the setting will always reset to Analog if the power is switched off/on, b) on returning to standby, the setting will remain at the setting used for the transmission. (1, 0) is only |
| | | | | available if the G4 kit has been installed. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|---|---|---|
| 0 | Default transmis- sion mode | 0: Memory 1: Non-memory (imme- diate) | This bit determines which setting the machine returns to when power is switched off/on, and when returning to standby at the end of transmission. In memory mode, the message is al- ways stored to the hard disk before transmission. In non- memory mode, it is never stored. |
| 1 | Stamp default set- ting | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | If this bit is 1, the stamp will be enabled when power is switched on, and every page scanned successfully (memory mode) or sent successfully (non-memory mode) will have a small red circle stamped on it. For each transmission, the stamp can be switched on/off with a user option setting, but after scanning/transmission, the setting will always return to the default specified by this bit. |
| 2 | Transmission restriction by department code | 0: Off 1: On | If this bit is 1, the user must enter a department code to gain access to the machine. The code must have been programmed in advance with Function 96. |
| 3 | Free polling | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | In free polling, polling can take place even if Polling ID codes of the communicating machines do not match. If this bit is 1, free polling cannot be used. |

Continued on the next page
SCU Bit Switch 07 - Continued

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|--|--|--|
| 4 | Default setting for the time a message remains in memory during polling trans- mission | 0: 24 hours 1: Erased after one transmission | The message for polling transmission is stored to the hard disk. If this bit is 0, it can be polled many times within 24 hours, then the message is erased. If this bit is 1, the mes- sage remains on the disk until it has been polled once. For each polling transmission, the setting can be changed with a user option setting, but it will always return to the default specified by this bit. |
| 5 | Department code input method if transmission restric- tion is in use. | 0: Keypad or bar code 1: Bar code only | If the user has installed the optional bar code reader, the department code can be entered by scanning the reader across the required bar code. If the bit is 0, the code can be entered by either keypad or bar code reader. If the bit is 1, only the bar code reader can be used. |
| 6 | Default setting for the A3 width trans- mission option | 0: Off 1: On | If this bit is 1, A3 width transmission will be enabled when power is switched on. If A3 width transmission is on, scanned A3 fax messages will not be reduced to B4 or A4 before stor- ing; this is useful if the fax at the other end has an A3 printer. For each transmission, A3 width transmission can be switched on/off with a user option setting, but after transmis- sion, the setting will always return to the default specified by this bit. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|--|-----------------------------|--|
| 0 | Stamp during copy mode | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | If this bit is 1, a small red circle will be printed at the bottom of each copied original. |
| 1 | TTI in copy mode | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | If this bit is 1, the machine's TTI will be printed at the top of each page printed using copy mode. |
| 2 | Closed network for transmission | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | 0: Transmission will always take place.1: The machine will not transmit if the other end has a different Polling ID code. Note that if the other end is not a Ricoh machine, closed network may not be reliable. |
| 3 | Closed network for reception | 0: Disabled 1: Reception | This is similar to bit 2 above, except that it is for reception. |
| 4 | Transmission to al- ternate address | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | Quick Dial Keys and Speed Dial Codes can be programmed with two numbers. The second number is the alternate ad- dress. If this bit is 0, the first address is dialled. If the number is busy, the number will be redialled until the maximum num- ber of redial attempts has passed. If the number still cannot be reached, the machine will dial the alternate address. If that address also cannot be reached, it will be redialled until the maximum number of redial attempts has passed, and the machine will return to standby and attempt no more redialling. |

SCU Bit Switch 08 - Continued

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|---|---------------------------|---|
| 5 | Batch transmission | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | With batch transmission, if the machine sends a message from the hard disk to a certain location, any other files waiting to be resent to the same address will be sent out on the same call. Also, if memory transmission is in progress, another mes- sage can be sent to the same location on the same call by placing the pages in the feeder, dialling, and pressing Start. |
| 6 | Stop key during memory transmis- sion | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | 0: The Stop key has no effect during memory transmission. 1: If Stop is pressed during memory transmission, the com- munication will stop immediately. This has no effect on transfer transmission or if a remote control system is reading from the machine's memory. The Stop key can always be used in non-memory mode. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|-------------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| 0 | Transmission result report | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | This report is printed after each transmission. |
| 1 | Error report | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | This report is printed if there was an error during the com- munication. It contains an error code if bit 1 of bit switch 10 is 0. |
| 2 | Memory report | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | This report is printed after a message has been stored to the hard disk for transmission. |
| 3 | Polling reserve report | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | This report is printed after the user has programmed the machine for polling. |
| 4 | Polling clear report | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | This report is printed after the machine automatically erases a message for polling transmission (see SCU bit switch 07, bit 4). |
| 5 | Polling result report | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | This report is printed after a polling operation has been com- pleted. |
| 6 | Mode change report | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | This report is printed when the machine changed the resolu- tion of the message before sending it out. This report is only used in W. Germany. |
| 7 | Automatic Journal printout | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | The Journal informs the user about recent communications, in- cluding the date, time, duration, other party name, and result. If this bit is 0, it is printed after every 50 communications. If it is 1, the Journal is only printed if the user executes Function 61. |

| BIT | FUNCTION DATA | | COMMENTS |
|-----|---|---------------------------|--|
| 0 | Automatic charge control report out- put | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | If this bit is at 0, the charge control report is automatically printed out once a month, on a fixed date that is decided by a RAM address setting. If the bit is 1, the report can only be printed by function 72. |
| 1 | Error code listing on error reports | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | If this bit is 1, error codes are not printed on error reports, and the user will never see any error codes. |
| 2 | Explanation of codes and symbols on the Journal | 0: Brief 1: Detailed | 0: A few of the codes and symbols used on the Journal are explained at the bottom of the report.1: A more detailed list is given. |
| 3 | Printing of dedi- cated tx parameters on the Quick Dial and Speed Dial lists | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | If this bit is 1, the dedicated tx parameters for each Quick Dial/Speed Dial will be listed. This is a useful check for service personnel, but this bit should be kept at 0 during normal operation. |
| 4 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 7 | Printing of a sample of the stored message on memory, transmis- sion, error, and poll- ing clear reports | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | If this bit is 0, the first few inches of the message are printed at the bottom of the report as a reference for the user. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|--------------|---|--------------------------------------|--|
| 0 | Addition of '1' before the area code during trans- fer request | 0: No (Japan/Europe) 1: Yes (USA) | If this bit is 1, a '1' is automatically inserted before the area code of transfer broadcaster and end receiver numbers in a transfer request operation. |
| 1 | International dial access code for transfer request | 0: '0' is added 1: Not included | If this bit is 0, a '0' will be automatically inserted before the area code of end receiver numbers in a transfer request operation, if those stations are inside the same country as the broadcaster. This will be useful, for example, when making a transfer request to a broadcaster and end receivers all located inside the U. K., because area codes start with '0' in the U.K. |
| 2 to 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory settings. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|--------|--|--|---|
| 0 | Date and time in the TTI | 0: Included 1: Not included | If this bit is 0, the date and time of transmission will be printed on pages received at the other end. |
| 1 | TTI name in the TTI | 0: Included 1: Not included | If this bit is 0, the TTI will be printed on pages received at the other end. |
| 2 | Page number in the 0: Included TTI 1: Not included | | If this bit is 0, the page number will be printed on pages received at the other end. |
| 3 | Auto note in the TT | 0: Included 1: Not included | If this bit is 0, the auto note selected by the user will be printed on pages received at the other end. |
| 4 | Department name in the TTI | 0: Included 1: Excluded | If this bit is 0 and if a department code was used, the identify- ing label stored with the department code will be printed on pages received at the other end. |
| | Distance of TTI from | the margin | |
| 5 6 | Bit 6 Bit 5 Dista 0 0 Norm 0 1 2.75 1 0 3.5 c 1 1 4.25 | nce nal (2 cm in from the left) cm in from the left m in from the left cm in from the left | These bits control the starting position of the TTI from the left margin of the pages printed at the other end. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|----------------------|---|--|
| 7 | TTI printing positio | n 0: Superimposed on the page data 1: Printed before the data leading edge | 0: The TTI is printed on top the data at the start of the page, so some of the image will not be visible. For normal business letters, this is not usually a problem. 1: If all the image must be visible, use this setting. The TTI will be printed just before the leading edge of the data. Note that this could cause problems if the receiver is a cut paper machine like the FAX7000; the extra length could cause data reduction and/or page separation, so the data would not be an exact reproduction of the original. This bit affects the printed pages at the other end. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|---|--------------------------------|---|
| 0 | TTI letter size | 0: Normal 1: Half size | This determines the size of letters in the TTI printed at the other end. |
| 1 | Address label in- clusion in the TTI | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | If this bit is 0, the address label the user programmed as an option in Quick and Speed Dial programming will be included in the TTI sent to the other end. This address label can take the form of a message up to 8 lines long; it is not the same as the address label that is displayed on the LCD during dialling. |
| 2 | File number in the TTI | 0: Included 1: Not included | If this bit is 0, the hard disk file number is printed on mes- sages received at the other end. Even if non-memory trans- mission is used, there will be a file number. |
| 3 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 4 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|---|-----------------------------|---|
| 0 | Transfer request | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | |
| 1 | Confidential trans- mission | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | |
| 2 | Action as a transfer broadcaster | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | |
| 3 | Transfer request using Speed Dial, Quick Dial, and Groups stored in the transfer broad- caster | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | If this bit is set to 0, the machine can use the Quick Dials, Speed Dials, and Groups stored in the transfer broadcasting terminal when dialling the end receivers. An up-to-date version of the broadcaster's telephone list must be referred to when dialling in this manner. |
| 4 | Confidential recep- tion | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | |
| 5 | Inclusion of ECM on/off as a user function | 0: Yes 1: No | If this bit is 0, ECM can be switched on/off by the user. |
| 6 | Voice message storage | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | If this is 1 and if G3 CCU bit switch 11 bit 0 is 1, no voice mes- sage can be stored. |
| 7 | Minimum voice message length | 0: No limit 1: 5 seconds | If this bit is 1, the stored voice message must be longer than 5 seconds, or the machine will not transmit it. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | FUNCTION DATA COMMENTS | |
|-----|---|---|---|
| 0 | Compression method Bit 1 Bit 0 Settin 0 0 MMR 0 1 MR, 1 1 0 MR, 1 1 1 MH | d lg l, MR, MH, EFC MH, EFC MH | In tx mode, these bits determine what compression methods are available. The methods are listed in order of priority; if the other end cannot receive using the highest priority mode (for example, MMR), the machine will step down (for example, to MR). EFC is not used with MMR, or when communicating with another maker's machine. In rx mode, these bits inform the transmitting terminal of the type(s) of coding that the machine is able to receive. |
| 2 | Mark in left margin of printout if there was a line error | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | If this bit is 1, a dash is printed in the margin alongside lines that were affected by line errors. |
| 3 | Printing of error data if a line error occurs | 0: The previous line is repeated 1: The line is printed complete with errors | This bit determines how the machine treats received lines that were affected by line errors. |
| 4 | Error counter decrement during G3 reception Valid only if SCU bit switch 17, bit 0, is 0. | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | 0: Data errors caused by a noisy line or defective machine are counted. If the count reaches 10, the machine will send RTN to the other end in reply to the post-message command. As 10 good lines cause the count to decrement by 1, RTN will only occur in bad conditions. 1: The counter will not decrement; frequent RTNs may occur. Line error counting is not done if ECM is being used. |

SCU Bit Switch 15 - Continued

| BIT | FUNCTION DATA | | DATA | COMMENTS | |
|--------|---|------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 5 | Sub scan OR processing of scanned data in memory tx mode | | R of a in node | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | 0: If the data was stored using Super Fine resolution, and the other end can only print in Detail mode, the data is OR processed.In immediate transmission, this bit is ignored and OR processing is always done to convert Super Fine to Detail if the other end cannot print in Super Fine mode. |
| | Type of coding used in the DCR test mode | | | d in the DCR test mode | |
| 6 7 | Bit | 7 0 1 1 | 6 0 1 0 1 | Type MMR Not used MR MH | The settings of these bits determine what type of coding is used for the DCR test (service function 09, mode 4). |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|---|---------------------------|--|
| 0 | Page retransmis- sion | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | 0: In memory or in non-memory transmission, if the other end returns a negative receipt signal, the machine will try to resend the page from memory. Page retransmission is not done if ECM is enabled, as ECM is a more efficient retransmis- sion method. |
| 1 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 2 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 3 | Dialling at the machine's ten-key pad when the hand- set is off-hook | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | 1: Numbers cannot be dialled at the fax machine's built in telephone keypad if the handset connected to the machine is off-hook. |
| 4 | Action if Redial is pressed after chain dialling | 0: Normal 1: Limited | 0: If the Redial key is pressed to redial a destination that was input by chain dialling (using more than one Quick Dial/Speed Dial to dial a destination), the whole chain will be redialled. 1: Only the number stored in the first part of the chain will be redialled. For example, a number could be dialled by pressing three Quick Dial keys; the first key holding the international dial access code, the second holding the country code, and the third the area code and number. If this bit is at 1, only the international dial access code would be redialled. |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

| BIT | FUNCTION DATA | | | | DATA | COMMENTS |
|--------|---|-----------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------|--|
| 0 | Error count method 0: SCU bit switch 15, bit 4 1: SCU bit switch 17, bits 3 to 7 | | | | | |
| 1 | Not us | sed | | | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 2 | Not us | sed | | | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 3 4 | Error Bit | thresho 4 0 0 1 | old 3 0 1 0 | Thre 3/ 4/ 5/ 1 | eshold 6/ 12 8/ 16 10/ 20 | If there are more error lines in the received page than the threshold specified by these bits, the page is rejected. The first value given is for Standard resolution, the second is for Detail resolution, and the third is for Super Fine resolution. |
| | | 1 | 1 | 6/ 1 | 12/24 | The error counter is decremented by one every time an error- free line is received. |
| | Error | line rat | io | | | |
| 5 | Bit | 7 0 | 6 0 | 5 0 | Value 5% | The value is the number of error lines divided by the number of total lines, expressed as a percentage. |
| 6 | | 0 0 | 0 1 | 1 0 | 6% 7% | |
| 7 | | 0 1 1 | 1 0 0 | 1 0 1 | 8% 9% 10% | |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|---|---|---|
| 0 | Reception mode | 0: Automatic 1: Manual | This bit determines the default reception mode setting. The reception mode returns to this setting when power is switched off/on. The bit is changed by user function 88. |
| 1 | Number of copies of received docu- ment | 0: One 1: As specified by service function 03, mode 6 | This feature allows the machine to print more than one copy of each received document. |
| 2 | Communication parameter display | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | If this bit is set to 1, communication modes and the latest protocol signals are displayed on the operation panel LCD. This is a useful aid for troubleshooting. However, this bit must be kept at 0 during normal operation, or the user will not be able to see the other end's RTI on the display. An explanation of the display follows below, starting with an example display. |

TRANSMITTING G3N 72 STD A4 MR NFC T: NSS R: CFR FILE NO. 0165 PAGE: 1/1

Column 1 (Protocol Mode): G4 (Group 4), G3S (CCITT Group 3), G3N (Ricoh Group 3), or G2 (Group 2) Column 2 (Modem Rate): 96 (9600 bps), 72 (7200 bps), 48 (4800 bps), 24 (2400 bps) Column 3 (Resolution): 400 (400 x 400 dpi), 300 (300 x 300 dpi), 200 (200 x 200 dpi), 100 (200 x 100 dpi), SDL (16 x 15.4 I/mm), DTL (8 x 7.7 I/mm), or STD (8 x 3.85 I/mm) Column 4 (Document Width): A4 (up to 10. 1" wide), B4 (from 10. 1" to 11.7" wide), or A3 (wider than 11.7") Column 5 (Compression Type): MM (MMR), MR (MR), or MH (MH) Column 6 (Others): ECM (ECM), NFC (New EFC - no fillbits), EFC (EFC - fillbits added)

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|--|---|--|
| 3 | Chequered mark | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | If this bit is 0, the machine will print a chequered mark on the top left corner of the first page of every received fax message. This helps the user to separate the messages in the copy tray. |
| 4 | Redial mode if a polarity change is detected | 0: Only one redial 1: As programmed in the NCU parameter RAM addresses | 0: If the machine dials a telephone by mistake, it will detect a polarity change. Then it will only redial once. 1: The machine will redial as programmed in the NCU parameter RAM addresses. |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | Printing order of received pages | 0: Starting from page 1 1: Printed in reverse order | Most fax machines print the pages in the order that they were received. However, if this bit is 1, the pages are printed from the hard disk in reverse order; the user does not have to reor- der the pages after picking them off the copy tray. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

SCU Bit Switch 18 - Continued

SCU bit switches 19 and 20 are not used.

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|---|--|--|
| 0 | FTZ requirements | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | For use in W. Germany only. Do not change the factory setting. |
| 1 | Display priority be- tween RTI and CSI | 0: RTI 1: CSI | This bit determines whether the remote terminal's RTI or CSI will be displayed on the LCD during communication. If the bit is 0, RTI is given priority over CSI when communicating with a Ricoh machine. RTI is received in the NSF(C) frame. If the bit is 1, CSI will be given priority. |
| 2 | Eight-minute close | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | For use in W. Germany. |
| 3 | Programming level for CSI | 0: User level 1: Service level | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 4 | Running a keystroke program | 0: Press the program key only 1: Press the program key then press Start | 0: When storing a program, enter the destinations, functions and so on, then press the Start key, then F6.1: When storing a program, enter the destinations, functions and so on, then press F6. |

SCU Bit Switch 21 - Continued

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|---|---|---|
| 5 | Dedicated tx parameter program- ming | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | When this is 1, an extra option (for programming dedicated tx parameters - see page 2-43) appears in the display for programming Quick and Speed Dial (Functions 51, 52, 56, and 57). After programming, reset this bit to 0. |
| 6 | Memory read/write | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | When this is 0, a remote control system can read or write RAM data, such as TTI, RTI, and bit switches. The remote con- trol system must know the RAM addresses of this machine to make any changes. If the remote control device can only enter four-digit RAM addresses, then only addresses 240000 to 24FFFF can be changed; for example, to change address 240000, the control system operator must enter 0000. When this bit is 1, all remote control systems are locked out. |
| 7 | Recognition of the remote terminal's paper length | 0: Unlimited length as- sumed 1: Limit specified by the other end is recognized. | 0: The unit always assumes that the other end has no rx paper length limit (such as in a thermal roll machine), and ig- nores the paper length limit in the protocol from the other end. 1: Use this setting if the machine frequently sends to machines that use cut paper. For example, if the receiver specifies Letter size in the protocol, but the machine is send- ing a Legal size page, the machine will send MPS when it has sent a Letter sized length of data. The other end will then feed another sheet of copy paper and the rest of the data will be sent. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|--------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| 0 | Inch-mm conver- sion in tx mode | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | The data is scanned in dot per inch format to meet Group 4 standards. This bit determines whether to convert the data into dot per mm format for transmission to a Group 3 terminal. If this bit is 0, the data is not converted and the printed copy at the other end is slightly distorted (if the other end is a Group 3 based machine). If this bit is 1, the data will be converted; however, the conversion cuts out dots and lines of data, so the copy quality may be poor. The recommended setting for this bit is 0. |
| 1 | Inch-mm conver- sion in rx mode | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | The printer is designed to operate in dot per inch format, and assumes that each received page is in a dot per inch layout. This is to meet Group 4 standards. However, Group 3 mes- sages are in dot per mm format, so they are slightly distorted when they are printed (if the other end is a Group 3 based machine). This bit determines whether to convert the data from a dot per inch format into a dot per mm format before printing. If this bit is 0, the data is not converted and the prin- tout is a slightly distorted representation of the original. If the bit is 1, the data is converted; however, as dots and lines of data are inserted, the copy may not be a faithful reconstruc- tion of the original. |
| 2 to 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory settings. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| 0 | Transmission over analog networks | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | 0: The "Analog" selection is available by pressing the line selection key to light the Analog indicator. 1: The "Analog" selection is not available even if the line selec- tion key is pressed. |
| 1 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 2 | Transmission over digital networks | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | 0: The "Digital" selection is available by pressing the line selection key to light the Digital indicator. 1: The "Digital" selection is not available even if the line selection key is pressed. This bit is ineffective if the optional Group 4 interface kit is not installed. |
| 3 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 4 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

SCU bit switch 24 is not used.

| BIT | FUNCT | ON DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|------------------|---|--|
| | Conditions place | for substitute reception to take | |
| 0 | Bit 1 Bit | 0 Condition | Substitute reception never takes place if a Call Service condi- |
| | 0 0 | No conditions | tion exists, regardless of the settings of these bits. |
| I | 1 0 1 1 | Polling IDs must match Substitute rx is disabled | (1, 1) - Substitute reception is disabled only if the printer was down before reception started. If a printer problem develops during printing, substitute reception will take place, unless a Call Service condition develops. |
| 2 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 3 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 4 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

| BIT | FUN | | ١ | | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|------------------|-------------------|------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|--|
| | Excess switch | length 05 is 1 | (x) wh (reduc | nen bit ction d | 1 of SCU bit lisabled) | |
| 0 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit C |) x (mm) | Refer to bits 1 and 4 of SCU bit switch 05 for a full explanation. |
| | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | |
| | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 2 | |
| 2 | | | | | | |
| | | | to | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 14 | |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 15 | |
| | Excess switch | length 05 is 0 | (x) wł (reduc | nen bit ction e | : 1 of SCU bit enabled) | |
| 4 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | 4 x (mm) | When reduction is enabled, the machine converts the length |
| | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0`´ | of the paper (L) to a value L1 using the following formula: |
| 5 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | L1 = 16(L - 5)/15. |
| | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 2 | The excess length (x) is then the length in excess of L1. Typi- |
| 6 | | | | | | cal values of L and L1 (in mm) follow. |
| • | | | to | | | A5: L = 148, L1 = 152.5 |
| 7 | | | | | | B5: L = 182, L1 = 188.8 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 14 | Letter: L = 279, L1 = 292.3 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 15 | A4: L = 297, L1 = 311.5 |
| | | | | | | Legal: L = 356, L1 = 374.4 |
| | Refer t | o bits 1 | and 4 | of SC | CU bit switch 05 for | B4: L = 364, L1 = 382.9 |
| | more o | n redu | ction o | of rece | ived pages. | |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|----------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| 0 | Standard resolution | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | If this bit is 1, Standard resolution cannot be selected. |
| 1 | Detail resolution | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | If this bit is 1, Detail resolution cannot be selected. |
| 2 | Super Fine resolu- tion | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | If this bit is 1, Super Fine resolution cannot be selected. |
| 3 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 4 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

SCU bit switch 28 is not used.

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|----------------|---------------------------|---|
| 0 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 1 | Charge control | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | If this bit is 1, charge control functions, such as the charge control report will not operate. The charge control parameter table has been designed for use only in Italy and W. Germany. It cannot be used in areas that have more than 4 charge periods and/or more than 7 charge zones. See Page 1-34 for details. |
| 2 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 3 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 4 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

SCU bit switch 30 is not used.

| BIT | FUNCTION | | N | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|--|------------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------------------|---|
| | Mainter | nance | interva | I (Unit = '000 copies) | |
| 0 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Interval | When the maintenance interval has expired, the machine will |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 10 | report will contain a message informing the service center that |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 15 | maintenance is due. |
| 2 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 30 | (1, 1, 1) - No preventive maintenance |
| | 1 | 0 1 | 1 | 40 60 | |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | Never | |
| 3 | Inclusio Replace the Auto Call co | n of e Mas o Serv nditior | ter in vice ns | 0: No 1: Yes | If the master belt is to be replaced by the user, set this bit to 0. Otherwise, set this bit to 1; if this bit is 1, the machine will send an Auto Service Call report to the service station whenever the master belt needs replacing. |
| 4 | Master ment le | unit r vel | eplace- | 0: Service level 1: User level | If the master belt is to be replaced by the user, set this bit to 1. If this bit is 0, the master belt rotation counter can only be reset (using Function 99) by service personnel. Bits 4 and 5 must be set to the same value, and bit 3 must be the opposite value. |
| 5 | Replac dicator | e Ma | ster in- | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | If the master belt is to be replaced by the user, set this bit to 1. If this bit is 0, the Replace Master indicator will not light up when it is time to replace the master unit. Bits 4 and 5 must be set to the same value, and bit 3 must be the opposite value. |

SCU Bit Switch 31 - Continued

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|----------------------------|----------------------------|---|
| | Master Belt counter | limit (Unit = '000 copies) | |
| 6 | Bit 7 Bit 6 Limit 0 0 7 | | These bits determine the lifetime of the master unit. The master unit will have to be replaced when the master belt rota- |
| 7 | 0 1 10 1 0 12 1 1 15 | | tion counter reaches the value determined by these bits. The counter must then be reset using user function 99. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| 0 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 1 | W. German versio | n 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | Set this bit to 1 in machines installed in W. Germany. After 4 consecutive automatic dialling operations, the machine will have to wait for 5 minutes before auto dialling can take place again. |
| 2 | Austrian version | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | Set this bit to 1 in machines installed in Austria. 1. When dialling an address, if busy tone, CED, GI, or DIS are not detected and T1 times out, the address cannot be redialled; if the same thing happens for three consecutive addresses, dialling/transmission from the hard disk is disabled (to reset the machine, press Stop when the machine is in standby mode). 2. If a busy tone is received in 10 consecutive dialling attempts, dialling/transmission from memory is disabled (to reset the machine, press Stop when the machine is in standby mode). 3. If a ringback tone and then a busy tone are detected, the machine cannot dial to the same address. |

SCU Bit Switch 32 - Continued

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|-------------------|---------------------------|--|
| 3 | Norwegian version | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | Set this bit to 1 in machines installed in Norway. When dialling an address, if busy tone, CED, GI, or DIS are not detected and T1 times out, the address cannot be redialled. |
| 4 | Swiss version | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | Set this bit to 1 in machines installed in Switzerland. After print- ing a confidential or substitute reception (or a polling recep- tion kept on the hard disk by substitute reception), the message is not cleared from the hard disk. Also, if the power was switched off during memory reception, all data is kept on the hard disk unless less than one page had been received at the time. |
| 5 | Denmark version | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | Set this bit to 1 in machines installed in Denmark. If dial tone detection, T1 timeout, or busy tone detection occurs on more than 10 consecutive dialling attempts, automatic dialling will be disabled (manual dialling will still be available). |
| 6 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

SCU bit switches 33 to 40 are not used.

3. G3 CCU - Factory Settings

| | U. K. | Germany | Italy | France | Universal |
|---------|-------|---------|-------|--------|-----------|
| Bit Sw. | Hex | Hex | Hex | Hex | Hex |
| 1 | 05 | 05 | 05 | 05 | 05 |
| 2 | 27 | 27 | 27 | 27 | 27 |
| 3 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 4 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 80 |
| 5 | 00 | 02 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 6 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 7 | 4E | 4E | 4E | 4E | 4E |
| 8 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 9 | 00 | 01 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 10 | 44 | 44 | 44 | 44 | 44 |
| 11 | 80 | 81 | 80 | 80 | 80 |
| 12 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 13 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 14 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 15 | 02 | 01 | 03 | 00 | 02 |

| | U. K. | Germany | Italy | France | Universal |
|---------|-------|---------|-------|--------|-----------|
| Bit Sw. | Hex | Hex | Hex | Hex | Hex |
| 16 | 06 | 06 | 06 | 06 | 06 |
| 17 | CO | C0 | C0 | CO | C0 |
| 18 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 19 | 09 | 06 | 06 | 09 | 06 |
| 20 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 21 | 07 | 37 | 07 | 07 | 07 |
| 22 | 01 | 01 | 01 | 01 | 01 |
| 23 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 24 | C0 | C0 | C0 | C0 | C0 |
| 25 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 26 | 09 | 06 | 06 | 09 | 06 |
| 27 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 28 | 07 | 07 | 07 | 07 | 07 |
| 29 | 01 | 01 | 01 | 01 | 01 |
| 30 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 31 | 01 | 01 | 01 | 01 | 01 |
| 32 | 9F | 9F | 9F | 9F | 9F |
| 33 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 34 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 |
| 35 | 08 | 08 | 08 | 08 | 08 |
| 36 | 0F | 0F | 0F | 0F | 0F |
| 37 | FF | FF | FF | FF | FF |
| 38 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 39 | 00 | 44 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 40 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |

4. G3 CCU - Bit Switch Tables

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|---------------|---------------------------|---|
| 0 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 1 | Group 2 | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | Set this bit to 1 during communication tests that require Group 2 to be disabled. Reset the bit to 0 after testing. |
| 2 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 3 | CCITT Group 3 | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | Set this bit to 1 during communication tests that require CCITT Group 3 to be disabled. Reset the bit to 0 after testing. |
| 4 | Ricoh Group 3 | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | Set this bit to 1 during communication tests that require Ricoh Group 3 to be disabled. Reset the bit to 0 after testing. |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| 0 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 1 | Short preamble | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | This allows communication time between Ricoh machines to be reduced. The pre-frame flag sequence is reduced from 1 s to 0.2 s. |
| 2 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 3 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 4 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | ECM communica- tion | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | 0: ECM will be used if the other end can communicate using ECM. 1: ECM is never used. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|------------------------|--------------------|--|
| | Initial modem rate for | transmission (bps) | |
| 0 | Bit 1 Bit 0 Rate | | These bits set the initial starting modem rate for transmission. |
| | 0 0 9600 | | The rate may fall back to a slower rate depending on the line |
| 1 | 0 1 /200 | | condition and the other terminal. |
| | 1 1 2400 | | |
| | | | |
| | Initial modem rate for | reception (bps) | |
| 2 | Bit 3 Bit 2 Rate | | The setting of these bits is used to inform the sending |
| | 0 0 9600 | | machine of the initial starting modem rate that the machine |
| 3 | 0 1 /200 | | can receive. If 9600 bps presents a problem during rx, use a |
| | 1 U 4800 | | lower setting. |
| | 1 1 2400 | | |
| 4 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | | | |
| | Not used | | Do not change the factory settings. |
| 7 | | | |

| BIT | FUI | ΙΟΙΤΟΙ | N DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|---------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| | Monitor | ^r speak | er off timing | |
| 0 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Timing | These bits determine how much of the communication can be |
| 4 | 0 | 0 | After GI/NSF/DIS (tx mode) | heard at the monitor speaker. $(1, 0)$ or $(1, 1)$ may be useful during tests. Bits 2 and 2 determine the turge of communice |
| I | | | (rx mode) | tion that the monitor speaker operates with. |
| | 0 | 1 | 20 s after start of | |
| | | • | communication | |
| | 1 | 0 | At DCN | |
| | 1 | 1 | At DCN | |
| | Commu used | unicatio | ns for which the speaker is | |
| 2 | Bit 2 | Bit 3 | Туре | These bits determine the types of communication for which |
| | 0 | 0 | Non-memory tx only | the monitor speaker can be used. If the setting is (1, 1), the |
| 3 | 0 | 1 | All tx | speaker does not operate during communication. |
| | 1 | 0 | Tx and rx | |
| | 1 | 1 | Speaker off | |
| 4 | Not use | ed | | Do not change the factory setting. |

G3 CCU Bit Switch 04 - Continued

| BIT | FUI | NCTIO | N | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|---------|-------|----------|----------|---|
| | Monitor | speak | ker volu | ume (dB) | |
| 5 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Volume | These bits are changed by user function 95. These bits do |
| | 0 | 0 | 0 | -25 | not affect the voice message playback volume. |
| 6 | 0 | 0 | 1 | -18 | |
| | 0 | 1 | 0 | -12 | |
| 7 | 0 | 1 | 1 | -6 | |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 7 | |
| | 1 | 1 | 0 | 10 | |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 13 | |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|--------------|-----------------------------|--|
| 0 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 1 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 2 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 3 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 4 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 5 | ECM T5 timer | 0: 3 minutes 1: 1 minute | The T5 timer determines how long the machine waits for a multipage signal from the receiver after sending a page. The bit could be set to 1 as a time-saving measure, but it is normally 0 because if the other end is a single buffer machine with a slow I/O rate, more than 1 minute could be needed. |
| 6 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|--------|---|-----------------------|---|
| | Maximum number of att page after sending CTC | tempts to resend a | |
| 0 1 | Bit 1 Bit 0 Setting 0 0 4 0 1 3 1 0 2 | | After sending a page, the machine waits for the response. If the other end informs (using the PPR signal) that there were errors, the defective part of the data will be resent. The machine can then try to correct the data up to 4 times; the |
| | 1 1 1 | | number of times is determined by the setting of these two bits. If the data is still bad, the machine will send CTC or EOR (see bit 2 below). |
| 2 | CTC transmission 0: (tx side) 1: | Enabled : Disabled | This is normally kept at 0. If the bit is 1, EOR is sent instead or CTC. CTC means that the tx side will continue to resend the remaining error data for the page, possibly at a lower data rate (see bit 3 below), although all retries have been made. EOR means that the tx side will stop trying to correct the errors for this page and will go on to the next page. |
| 3 | Modem rate 0: fallback using CTC 1: | Enabled Disabled | After all attempts to correct errors on a page, the machine can send CTC or EOR (see bit 2 above). If CTC is used, the tx side will continue trying. If this bit is 0, the data will be sent at a lower modem rate. EOR will only be sent if all tries at 2400 bps fail. If this bit is 1, the data will be resent at the original speed. If the page cannot be sent after all retries, the machine will not send CTC or retry. This bit is ignored if bit 2 is 1. |

Continued on the next page

G3 CCU Bit Switch 06 - Continued

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|--|--|--|
| 4 | Modem rate fallback method used with CTC | 0: Ricoh non-standard 1: CCITT standard | 0: Ricoh non-standard can be used to transmit to another maker's machine. The modem rate will fall back after CTC sooner than the CCITT standard if the line is very bad, unless the modem rate is already 2400 or 4800 bps. 1: The modem rate will fail back after CTC when the maximum number of attempts to send the page have been made (see bits 0 and 1). If bits 2 or 3 are 1, this bit is ignored. |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|--|---|---|
| 0 | Echo counter- measure 1 | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | 0: If the same frame that was transmitted is received, it is ignored.1: The machine will hang up if it receives the same signal twice. |
| 1 | Echo counter- measure 2 | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | 0: Frame end flag transmission time is increased by 3 s. |
| 2 | Recovery method when a carrier drop cannot be detected after receiving a frame | 0: Line fail 1: Expected reply to the frame is transmitted after 1 s | Set this bit to 1 if error code 1100 occurs. |
| 3 | Training error tolerance method | 0: Ricoh 1: Kalle | This bit determines which of the settings described in bits 4 and 5 below will be used. |
| | Training error tolerar | nce | |
| 4 | Bit 5 Bit 4 Ricoh 0 0 15 | Kalle 14 | If the machine detects more errors during training than the number set by these bits, training fails and the machine will |
| 5 | 0 1 10 1 0 2 1 1 0 | 9 4 1 | send FTT. The data will be resent at a lower rate. |
| 6 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

G3 CCU bit switch 08 is not used.

1

1

5

| BIT | FUNCTION DATA | COMMENTS |
|--------|--|--|
| 0 | Fallback on receiv- 0: No 1: Yes ing a negative sig- nal (RTN/PIN) | If this bit is 1, the machine's tx modem rate will fall back in ac- cordance with the settings of bits 6 and 7 below before send- ing the next page if a negative code is received. This bit is ignored if ECM is being used. |
| 1 | Voice request from 0: Ignored other end in 1: Enabled memory tx mode | If this bit is 0, voice requests made by the other end when the machine is transmitting from memory will be ignored. If this bit is 1, the user will be alerted even in memory mode, if G3CCU bit switch 05, bit 1 is set to 0. |
| 2 | Not used | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 3 | Not used | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 4 5 | Not used | Do not change the factory settings. |
| | Number of times RTN/PIN can be received before modem rate fallback | |
| 6 7 | Bit 7 Bit 6 Times 0 0 2 0 1 3 1 0 4 | These bits determine the maximum number of training at- tempts that can be made at the same modem rate. When the limit has run out, the machine's modem rate falls back. See bit 0 above. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|--|---|--|
| 0 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| | Manual dial mode, pulse val between the start of e | dial - minimum inter- each dialled digit | |
| 1 | Bit 2 Bit 1 Interval | | If a digit takes less than this value to dial (for example, if diall- |
| 2 | 0 0 2s 0 1 0.5s 1 0 1s 1 1 1.5s | | ing 1), the machine will not dial the next digit until the interval has elapsed, even if the user already pressed the next digit. The Ds relay will not be switched off between digits in such cases, so excessive wear of the relay is saved. If the user complains about the long time between sending out digits in manual dial mode, use a lower value, but try not to set it lower than 1 s, to avoid wear on the Ds relay. |
| 3 | DIS detection times 0: 1 1:2 | 2 | The machine will send DCS (G3 set-up signal) if it receives DIS. If echoes are frequent, setting this bit to 1 will allow the machine to wait for the second DIS before sending DCS. |
| 4 | Echo suppression0: Din V.29 (7200 or1: E9600 bps) com- munication | Disabled Enabled | If this bit is 1, when the machine is sending a signal to the other end, it ignores incoming signals on the line until it has finished sending the signal. |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

| BIT | FUNC | TION | | DATA | ١ | COMMENTS |
|-----|----------------------|----------|-----------------|---------------------|--------------|---|
| 0 | Automatic message | c voice | 0: 1: | Enabled Disabled | | If this bit is 0 and a voice message is programmed, the machine will send the voice message if a telephone user calls the machine by mistake. The message can then warn the other end to hang up before it sends the modem tones. This bit changes when the user switches voice message on/off. |
| 1 | Not used | | | | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 2 | Not used | | | | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 3 | Not used | | | | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| | Attenuatio | on for a | automati | ic voice n | nessage (dB) | |
| 4 | Bit 7 E 0 | Bit 6 B | it 5 Bit 0 0 | 4 Attenu | uation | These bits determine how much the Tx Hybrid IC (HIC 2) on the G3CCU board attenuates the voice message. |
| 5 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 -1 | | |
| 6 | | to | | | | |
| 7 | 1 1 | 1 1 | 1 1 | 0 -14 1 -15 | | |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|----------|------|------------------------------------|
| 0 | | | |
| 1 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 2 | | | |
| 3 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 4 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

G3 CCU bit switches 13 and 14 are not used.

| BIT | FUNCTION | I DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|---------------|-----------------|--|
| | Country code | | |
| 0 | Bit 4 3 2 1 0 | Country | Set these bits in accordance with the country of installation. |
| 1 | 00001 | W. Germany | |
| 2 | 00010 | U. K./Universal | These bits are automatically copied to G4 CCU bit switch 15 |
| 3 | 00011 | Italy | when power is switched on or the Stop key presses for more |
| 4 | 00100 | Austria | than 10 seconds, if the G4 interface kit is installed. |
| | 00101 | Belgium | |
| | 00110 | Denmark | Machines sent to countries other than those on the list op- |
| | 00111 | Finland | posite will have a country code of 00000. The NCU and auto- |
| | 01000 | Ireland | dial parameters will be the same as those for W. Germany, so |
| | 01001 | Norway | the parameters must be adjusted to suit local requirements. |
| | 01010 | Sweden | |
| | 01011 | Switzerland | |
| | 01100 | Portugal | |
| | 01101 | Netherlands | |
| | 01110 | Spain | |
| | 01111 | Israel | |
| | 10001 | U. S. A./Canada | |
| | 10010 | Asia | |
| | 10011 | Japan | |
| | 00000 | France | |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

G3 CCU Bit Switch 16 is not used

| BIT | FUNCTION DATA | | COMMENTS |
|-----|---------------------|---------------------------------|--|
| | CNG signal transmi | ssion | |
| 0 | Bit 1 Bit 0 Sign | al | These bits determine the type of CNG signal that the machine |
| | 0 0 1100 |) Hz | transmits. |
| I | 1 0 CNG |) HZ S transmission disabled | |
| | 1 1 130 | 0 Hz for 4 s | |
| | CED signal transmis | ssion | |
| 2 | Bit 3 Bit 2 Sign | al | These bits determine the type of CED signal that the machine |
| - | 0 0 2100 |) Hz | transmits. |
| 3 | 0 1 1650 |) Hz | |
| | 1 0 1850 |) Hz | |
| | I GEL | transmission disabled | |
| 4 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | | | |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory settings. |

| BIT | FUNCTIO | N DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|----------------|---------------------------|--|
| | Telephone line | e type | |
| 0 | Bit 1 Bit 0 | Туре | These bits determine the type of dialling used by the machine. |
| 4 | 0 0 | Pulse dial, 10 pps | The bits are changed when the user changes the telephone |
| I | 1 0 | DTMF | The type setting with function or. |
| | 1 1 | Not used | |
| | Conditions for | going into tx mode | |
| 2 | Bit 3 Bit 2 | Conditions | In some countries, this setting is fixed according to PTT re- |
| | 0 0 | Polarity change, 2100 Hz, | quirements. In countries that have the setting at (0, 0), the |
| 3 | 0 1 | and NSF detection | other settings can be used to troubleshoot tx problems; if |
| | 1 0 | 2100 Hz detection | tried and the cause determined by a process of elimination |
| | 1 1 | NSF detection | |
| 4 | | | |
| _ | Not used | | Do not change the factory settings. |
| 5 | | | |
| 6 | N I | | |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory settings. |

| BIT | FUN | | NC | | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|---------|------|-----------|--------|-------------|--|
| | Attenua | tion | for trans | mitted | data (dB) | |
| 0 | Bit 3 | Bit | 2 Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Attenuation | These bits determine how much the modem attenuates the |
| 1 | 0 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 -1 | data signal. |
| | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | to | | | |
| 3 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | -14 | |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | -15 | |
| 4 | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | |
| • | Not use | ed | | | | Do not change the factory settings. |
| 6 | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|--------|------------------------|-------------------------|---|
| | Cable equalizer for G3 | 3 transmission (dB) | |
| 0 | Bit 1 Bit 0 dB | | Adjust these bits if there is a lot of signal loss because of the |
| 4 | | | length of wire between the modem and the telephone ex- |
| I | 1 0 8 | | change. |
| | 1 1 12 | | |
| | Cable equalizer for G3 | 3 reception (dB) | |
| 2 | Bit 3 Bit 2 dB | | Adjust these bits if there is a lot of signal loss because of the |
| | 0 0 0 [16] |] | length of wire between the modem and the telephone ex- |
| 3 | |] | change. The alternative values in square brackets are used if |
| | 1 1 12 [20] |] | DIE 6 OF G3CCU DIE SWITCH 22 IS at 1. |
| | Minimum G3 ry signal | carrier detection level | |
| 1 | Bit 5 Bit 4 dB | | Select a higher value if had lines are often encountered (-33 is |
| 4 | 0 0 -43 | | the highest value). |
| 5 | 0 1 -38 | | |
| | 1 0 -33 | | |
| | 1 1 -48 | | |
| 6 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory settings. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|---|-----------------------|---|
| | Cable equalizer for G2 tra | nsmission (dB) | |
| 0 | Bit 1 Bit 0 dB | | Adjust these bits if there is a lot of signal loss because of the |
| 1 | $\begin{array}{ccc} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 \end{array}$ | | length of wire between the modem and the telephone ex- |
| I | 1 0 8 | | change. |
| | 1 1 12 | | |
| | Cable equalizer for G2 rec | ception (dB) | |
| 2 | Bit 3 Bit 2 dB | | Adjust these bits if there is a lot of signal loss because of the |
| 0 | 0 0 0 [16] | | length of wire between the modem and the telephone ex- |
| 3 | 1 0 8 [20] | | bit 7 of G3CCU bit switch 22 is at 1. |
| | 1 1 12 [20] | | |
| | Minimum received G2 sign level (dB) | nal carrier detection | |
| 4 | Bit 5 Bit 4 dB | | Select a higher value if bad lines are often encountered (-33 is |
| | 0 0 -43 | | the highest value). |
| 5 | 0 1 -38 | | |
| | 1 1 -48 | | |

Continued on the next page

| BIT | FUNCTION | N DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|--------------------|-------------|---|
| | G2 delay equal | lizer links | |
| 6 | Bit 7 Bit 6 0 0 | Links 1 | If there is a copy quality problem in G2 tx or rx mode, try ad- justing these bits. If the other terminal is in the same area, try |
| 7 | 0 1 1 0 1 1 | 0 2 2 | setting the link number to 0 for that communication. If the other end is a long distance away, try a setting of 2. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|--|---------------------------|---|
| | Printout contrast threshold fax messages (Hex) | d for received G2 | |
| 0 | Bit 1 Bit 0 Hex value 0 0 20 (Mediu | m dark) | Use these bits to adjust the printout black/white threshold level for received G2 fax messages. |
| 1 | 0 1 14 (Lightes 1 0 18 (Mediu 1 1 28 (Darkes | st) m light) st) | |
| 2 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 3 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 4 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | G3 cable equalizer 0: 0, values 1: 1 | 4, 8, 12 6, 20, 20, 20 | This bit determines which values are available with various set- tings of bits 2 and 3 of G3CCU bit switch 20. |
| 7 | G2 cable equalizer 0: 0, values 1: 1 | 4, 8, 12 6, 20, 20, 20 | This bit determines which values are available with various set- tings of bits 2 and 3 of G3CCU bit switch 21. |

G3 CCU bit switches 23 to 36 are not used.

Note: Bit 0 of G3 CCU bit switch 31 must be kept at 1.

| BIT | FUNCT | ION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|------------|-------------|------------------|--|
| | PSTN acce | ess number | | |
| 0 | Access no. | Hex value c | of bit switch 37 | Program this bit switch if the machine is behind a PABX. The access number is the number that the user must dial to get an |
| 1 | to 9 | to F9 | | outside line. If the machine detects the access number at the start of a telephone number, it will connect with the PABX. |
| 2 | 00 | 00 | | pause for a few seconds, then dial the number. Example: If the access number for the PABX is 0, the bit |
| 3 | to 99 | to 99 | | switch must be set to F0. To do this, set bits 0 to 3 at 0, and bits 4 to 7 at 1. |
| 4 | | | | If there is no PABX, keep all bits at 1. |
| 5 | | | | |
| 6 | | | | |
| 7 | | | | |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|---|-----------------------------|--|
| | Dialling method in pulse dial mode | | |
| 0 | Bit 1 Bit 0 Meth | nod | P = Number of pulses sent out. N = Number dialled. Do not |
| | 0 0 Nori | mal (P = N) | change the factory settings. |
| I | | O(P = 10 - N) | |
| | 1 1 Not | used | |
| | PSTN access meth | od through PABX | |
| 2 | Bit 3 Bit 2 Meth | nod | Set these bits to match the type of signals accepted by the |
| | 0 0 No I | PABX | PABX. |
| 3 | | ess code (Loop Start) | |
| | 1 1 Flas | h start | |
| 4 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | Black line on the image in Group 2 mode | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | If this bit is 0, the black line for synchronization on the left side of the image will not be included. |
| 7 | TSI inclusion in the NSS frame | e 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | Do not change the factory setting. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|--|--|---|
| 0 | Line current detec- tion | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | Some countries require line current detection. To enable line current detection, set this bit to 0 then program the RAM addresses containing line current detection parameters. |
| 1 | PSTN dial tone detection | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | Some countries require PSTN dial tone detection. To enable PSTN dial tone detection, set this bit to 0 then program the RAM addresses containing PSTN dial tone detection parameters. |
| 2 | PABX dial tone detection | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | Some countries require PABX dial tone detection. To enable PABX dial tone detection, set this bit to 0 then program the RAM addresses containing PABX dial tone detection parameters. |
| 3 | Busy tone detection | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled | Some countries require busy tone detection. To enable busy tone detection, set this bit to 0 then program the RAM addresses containing busy tone detection parameters. |
| 4 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | Action if the user presses Stop during manual diall- ing (with handset) | 0: All numbers dialled 1: Dialling stops imme- diately | 0: The machine will dial all numbers entered by the user before Stop was pressed, then transmission will stop.1: Dialling will stop immediately after the user presses Stop. |
| 7 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |

| BIT | FUNCTION | DATA | COMMENTS |
|-----|---------------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| 0 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 1 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 2 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 3 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 4 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 5 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 6 | Not used | | Do not change the factory setting. |
| 7 | Back-to-back con- figuration | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled | To connect two machines directly, without using an exchange, set this bit to 1, then do the back-to-back test as described in the service mode section. After the test, reset the bit to 0. |

2-5. NCU Parameters

| No | Description | Formula | Remarks |
|----|---|-------------|-------------|
| 1 | Acceptable ringing signal frequency: Range 1, upper limit, low byte | See Note 1. | |
| 2 | Acceptable ringing signal frequency: Range 1, upper limit, high byte | See Note 1. | |
| 3 | Acceptable ringing signal frequency: Range 1, lower limit, low byte | See Note 1. | |
| 4 | Acceptable ringing signal frequency: Range 1, lower limit, high byte | See Note 1. | |
| 5 | Acceptable ringing signal frequency: Range 2, upper limit, low byte | See Note 1. | |
| 6 | Acceptable ringing signal frequency: Range 2, upper limit, high byte | See Note 1. | |
| 7 | Acceptable ringing signal frequency: Range 2, lower limit, low byte | See Note 1. | |
| 8 | Acceptable ringing signal frequency: Range 2, lower limit, high byte | See Note 1. | |
| 9 | Number of rings until a call is detected | N [rings] | |
| 10 | Minimum required ring length, first limit | See Note 3. | See Note 2. |

| No. | Description | Formula | Remarks |
|------|---|------------------|-------------|
| 11 | Minimum required ring length, second limit | See Note 3. | See Note 2. |
| 12 F | Ringing detection, reset time, lower byte | See Note 4. | |
| 13 F | Ringing detection, reset time, upper byte | See Note 4. | |
| 14 T | ime between closing the Ds relay and opening the Di relay | N = Time/2 [ms] | See Note 5. |
| 15 P | Pulse dial relay, break time | N = Time/2 [ms] | See Note 5. |
| 16 P | Pulse dial relay, make time | N = Time/2 [ms] | See Note 5. |
| 17 T | ime between the final closure of the Di relay and the opening of the Ds relay | N = Time/2 [ms] | See Note 5. |
| 18 N | Ainimum pause between dialled digits (pulse dial mode) | N = Time/20 [ms] | See Note 5. |
| 19 T | ime waited when a pause is entered at the operation panel | N = Time/20 [ms] | |
| 20 E | DTMF tone length | N = Time/2 [ms] | |
| 21 T | ime between dial digits (DTMF dial mode) | N = Time/2 [ms] | |
| 22 C | TMF tone transmission level | Level = -N (dBm) | See Note 6. |

Notes

1. Each frequency limit value requires two parameters. The settings of the two parameters (N) are calculated from the required frequency limit value (F) as follows.

N = FFFF[H] - 500,000/F Example: Parameters 1 and 2. The required value (F) is 24 Hz. So: N = FFFF[H] - 500,000/24 = FFFF[H] - 20,833 20,833 in hexadecimal code is 5161[H], so N = FFFF[H] - 5161[H], = AE9E. Therefore, parameter 1 becomes 9E, and parameter 2 becomes AE.

- 2. The cpu may not detect the first ring until parameter 05 + ringing signal wavelength x (1 to 2.5).
- If the ringing signal frequency is within range 1, parameter 10 will be used. If the frequency is within range 2, parameter 11 will be used. The parameter (N) is calculated from the required value (T) as follows. N = T x Mid-point frequency of the range Example: Parameter 10. The required value is 200 ms. So: N = 0.2 x 18 = 3.6

This value is rounded up to obtain 4.

- 4. The parameter setting (N) is calculated from the desired value (T) as follows.

 N = 50T
 Example: The desired value (T) is 8 seconds.
 Therefore N = 50 x 8 = 400. In hexadecimal code, this is 190[H]. Therefore parameter 12 becomes 90[H] and parameter 13 becomes 01[H].
- 5. Pulse dial timing parameters (14 to 18) are the values for a dial rate of 10 pps.
- 6. N must be between 0 and 15.

Redialling

Program the following addresses in hexadecimal code.

Non-memory transmission

Number of redials - RAM address 304050; maximum number of redials = 255 Redial interval - RAM address 304051 (unit = 1 minute); maximum interval = 255 minutes

Memory transmission

Number of redials - RAM address 304052; maximum number of redials = 255 Redial interval - RAM address 304053 (unit = 1 minute); maximum interval = 255 minutes

Charge Control Parameters

These are normally programmed using the procedure described in section 2-7. They can also be programmed by RAM address. The values are stored in addresses 2401E8 to 240237. The order in RAM is the same as the order in the table given in section 2-7.

Charge Control Report Printout Date

If automatic charge control printout is enabled by bit switch (SCU bit switch 10 bit 0 at 0), the report is printed once a month on a certain day.

The date of the next scheduled printout is stored in RAM as follows. Subsequent reports are printed monthly, on the same day of the month as specified in the RAM. To fix the day of output, enter the date for the next required output; subsequent printouts will be automatically made monthly.

30369A - Year (for. example, enter 90 for 1990)

30369B - Month (enter a value from 01 to 12)

30369C - Date (enter a value from 01 to 31)

30369D - Day of the week (enter a value from 01 [Monday] to 07 [Sunday])

CAUTION

Do not select the 31st, 30th, or 29th day of the month for regular report output. The reason is as follows.

For example, if the 31st of August is selected, the report will be printed on the 31st. The next month, September, has no 31st, so the report will be printed on the 30th. Then reports for future months will be printed on the 30th of the month, even if there are 31 days. In February, the report will be printed on the 28th (or 29th), and all reports after that will be printed on the 28th (or 29th until the following February).

Therefore, recommend that the user prints the reports on the 1st day of the month.

SECTION 3

REMOVAL AND REPLACEMENT

SECTION 3. REMOVAL AND REPLACEMENT

| 3-1. Covers | 3-2 |
|---|------|
| 3-1-1. Lower Front Right, Lower Left, and | |
| Upper Front Covers | 3-2 |
| 3-1-2. Operation Panel | 3-3 |
| 3-1-3. Upper Rear, Lower Rear, and | |
| BSRU Covers | 3-4 |
| 3-1-4. Top Right and Top Covers | 3-4 |
| 3-1-5. Rear Inner Cover, Right Inner Cover, | |
| and Document Table | 3-5 |
| 3-1-6. Front Inner Cover | 3-5 |
| 3-2. ADF and Scanner | 3-6 |
| 3-2-1. Document Feed and Pick-up Rollers | 3-6 |
| 3-2-2. Document Separation Roller | 3-7 |
| Separation Roller Adjustment | 3-8 |
| 3-2-3. Fluorescent Lamp | 3-9 |
| 3-2-4. Fluorescent Lamp Driver | 3-9 |
| 3-2-5. SBU | 3-10 |
| Scanner Adjustments | 3-11 |
| 3-2-6. Tx Motor Timing Belt Adjustment | 3-19 |
| 3-3. Printer - Charge | 3-20 |
| 3-3-1. Charge Corona Wire | 3-20 |
| 3-4. Printer - Exposure | 3-22 |
| 3-4-1. Second Cylindrical Lens | 3-22 |
| 3-4-2. Pentagonal Mirror and Motor | 3-23 |
| 3-4-3. Pentagonal Mirror Motor Driver | |
| (SMDR) | 3-25 |
| 3-4-4. LSD | 3-25 |
| 3-4-5. Laser Diode Unit | 3-26 |

| 3-9. Printer - Quenching |
|---|
| 3-9-1. Quenching Lamp |
| 3-10. PUBs |
| 3-10-1. SPU, VPU, G3CCU, and Modem 3-43 |
| 3-10-2. SCU and MBU |
| 3-10-3. UIB |
| 3-10-4. DSB |
| 3-10-5. DRU |
| 3-10-6. Power Pack |
| 3-10-7. PSU |
| 3-10-8. Hard Disk |
| 3-10-9. G3NCU |
| 3-10-10. LIB |
| 3-10-11. BSRU 3-51 |
| 3-11. Others |
| 3-11-1. Gas Spring Adjustment 3-51 |

IMPORTANT NOTICES

Switch off the machine and disconnect the power cord before doing any of the removal procedures, especially if those procedures involve components in or near the laser diode unit and laser beam path. Laser beams can cause permanent eye damage.

If the MBU is replaced, or the battery switch is accidentally switched off, reprogram the hard disk bad sectors. See "Installation - Hard Disk Initialization" for details.

If the hard disk is replaced, reprogram the bad sectors, using the bad sector information for the new hard disk. Also, format the hard disk. See "Installation - Hard Disk Initialization" for details. Then instruct the user to reprogram <u>all user functions</u>, such as Quick Dials, Speed Dials, Groups, RTI, TTI, CSI, and voice message.

3-1. Covers

- 3-1-1. Lower Front Right, Lower Left, and Upper Front Covers
- 1. Remove the upper and lower cassettes.
- 2. Open the lower front left cover [C].
- 3. Remove the lower front right cover [A] (3 screws, 2 rubber plugs). Unhook the cover carefully, taking care not to break hook [B].
- 4. Open the upper right cover.
- Remove the upper front cover [E] (4 screws, 2 rubber plugs). Pull the cover straight out, but take care not to tear off the foam from the components on the left side of the machine.
- Remove the lower left cover [D] (4 screws). Partly close the lower front left cover [C] while easing the cover off.
- 7. Remove the bracket [F] (2 screws).
- 8. Remove the lower front left cover [C].



- 3-1-2. Operation Panel
- 1. Remove the upper front cover (see section 3-1-1).
- 2. Remove plate [A] (6 screws).
- 3. Remove the PCB cover [B] (16 screws, unplug the speaker and SPU fan).
- 4. Remove the operation panel [C] (4 screws, 2 connectors).





- 3-1-3. Upper Rear, Lower Rear, and BSRU Covers
- 1. Access the machine from the rear.
- 2. Remove the telephone.
- 3. Remove the lower rear cover [A] (4 screws).
- 4. Open the right cover and the upper unit.
- 5. Remove the BSRU cover [B] (3 screws)
- Remove the upper rear cover [C] (4 screws, 2 connectors, 2 rubber plugs).
- 3-1-4. Top Right and Top Covers
- 1. Take off the sub document table.
- 2. Remove the top right cover [A] (2 screws). Pull down the handle first then ease off the cover.
- Note: Do not break the six hooks on the bottom of the cover.
- 3. Remove the top cover [B] (loosen 2 screws).





- 3-1-5. Rear Inner Cover, Right Inner Cover, and Document Table
- 1. Open the upper unit.
- 2. Remove the rear inner cover [A] (5 screws).
- 3. Remove the right inner cover [B] (2 screws).
- 4. Remove the document table [C] (unhook 4 hooks, remove 2 screws).
- 3-1-6. Front Inner Cover
- 1. Open the upper unit.
- 2. Remove the cover [D] (4 screws).



3-2. ADF and Scanner

- 3-2-1. Document Feed and Pick-up Rollers
- 1. Remove the document table (see p. 3-5).
- 2. Open the scanner cover.
- Remove the timing belt cover [A] (1 screw). Slide the cover towards the cassette end of the machine and lift it off.
- Open the upper unit. Remove the ADF clutch cover [B] (3 screws). Close the upper unit.
- 5. Remove the left document guide plate [C] (4 screws).
- 6. Remove the exposure glass [D].
- Caution: Place the exposure glass in a safe place.
 - Do not touch the surface of the glass.
 - Wipe the glass with a soft dry cloth before replacement.



- 7. Remove the document guide plate [E] (8 screws).
- 8. Remove E-ring [F], slide the bushing across, remove spring [G], then remove the feed roller unit [H].
- 9. Remove clips [I] and remove the pick-up [J] and feed [K] rollers.
- 3-2-2. Document Separation Roller
- 1. Press the manual feed button to open the manual feed cover [A].
- 2. Remove 2 screws [B].
- 3. Remove the separation roller ass'y [C] (2 screws).
- 4. Remove the separation roller [D].
- Cautions: Do not touch the surface of the new roller, or document feed errors will develop sooner than normal.
 - Do not replace the roller ass'y the wrong way round.



Separation Roller Adjustment

The separation torque and pressure can be adjusted to correct double feed or non-feed problems, or to customize the machine to meet user requirements if non-standard paper types are frequently used as documents.

Adjustment is done by adding or removing spacers [A] for torque, or [B] for pressure.

The machine is factory-set with 5 pressure spacers and 3 torque spacers. Do not use more than 6 pressure spacers or 5 torque spacers. Always keep within the shaded zone on the graph opposite, as close to the center as possible.

If the user uses thinner paper than usual, try to remove spacers (both [A] and [B]). If the user uses thicker paper than usual, try to add spacers (both [A] and [B]). Use trial and error until document feed is satisfactory.

Double feed: Add torque spacers and/or remove pressure spacers. Non-feed: Add pressure spacers and/or remove torque spacers.

Part Numbers

| Torque Spacers [A]: | H0081223 |
|-----------------------|----------|
| Pressure Spacers [B]: | H0081224 |





3-2-3. Fluorescent Lamp

- 1. Remove the document table (see section 3-1-5).
- 2. Open the scanner cover.
- 3. Open the upper unit.
- 4. Remove cover [A] (2 screws).
- 5. Slide out the lamps [B] (1 screw, 1 connector).
- 3-24. Fluorescent Lamp Driver
- 1. Remove the SMDR (see page 3-25).
- 2. Remove the fluorescent lamp driver [A] (3 screws, 2 connectors).




3-2-5. SBU

- 1. Remove the top cover (see section 3-1-4).
- 2. Remove the adjustment knobs [A] (1 screw each).
- 3. Remove the SBU [B] (2 screws, 1 connector).

After installing a new SBU, do the scanner adjustments on the following pages, and make a test copy of a chart before leaving the machine.



- Tools Required -
 - · Scan line test chart -
 - · 200 dpi test pattern -
 - Allen wrench

P/N H0089503 P/N A0129110

- Preparation -
- 1. Remove the top cover (see section 3-1-4).
- 2. Set the oscilloscope scale to 0.2 V/unit (vertical) and 0.5 ms/unit (horizontal).
- 3. Connect the oscilloscope probe to the XVIDEO test point and the ground to the GND test point on the SBU.
- 4. Clean the white pressure plate with a soft cloth and alcohol.
- 5. Light the fluorescent lamps (see page 2-33).

- Procedures -

| Step | Item | Procedure | |
|------|-----------|--|--|
| 1 | Alignment | Access the SBU as explained in "Preparation" above. Set the oscilloscope scale to 0.2 V/unit (vertical) and 0.5 ms/unit (horizontal). Connect the oscilloscope probe to the XVIDEO test point and the ground to the GND test point. Light the fluorescent lamps (see page 2-33). Place the scan line test chart [A] on the exposure glass as shown. Loosen the SBU securing screws [B]. Turn the adjustment knobs on the SBU until the scanner is aligned. Carefully tighten the SBU securing screws. | |
| | | | |

| Step | Item | Procedure | |
|------|-------------|--|----------------------|
| 2 | White Level | In the oscilloscope waveform, A should be about 1.5 V. If it is not, do the following. 1. Access the SBU as explained in "Preparation" above. 2. Set the oscilloscope scale to 0.2 V/unit (vertical) and 0.5 ms/unit (horizontal). 3. Connect the oscilloscope probe to XVIDEO and the ground to GND. 4. Light the fluorescent lamps (see page 2-33). 5. Remove any test charts that are on the exposure glass. 6. The white level voltage A should be about 1.5 V. Adjust VR1 if necessary. | A DCO.2V O.5ms |

| Step | Item | Procedure | |
|------|----------|---|--|
| 3 | Check | If the waveform has irregular patches, the lens, mirror, exposure glass, white pres- sure plate, or CCD may be dirty. If the waveform level is lower at the ends than in the middle, the fluorescent lamps may be wearing out. If the waveform has sharp peaks or dropouts, the CCD may be defective. | |
| 4 | Focusing | Access the SBU as explained in "Preparation" above. Set the oscilloscope scale to 0.2 V/unit (vertical) and 0.5 ms/unit (horizontal). Connect the oscilloscope probe to XVIDEO and the ground to GND. | |

- 4. Light the fluorescent lamps (see page 2-33).
- 5. Place the 200 dpi test pattern on the exposure glass.
- 6. Loosen the lens securing screw [A] (Allen screw).
- Move the lens block back [B] and forth until B is maximized (see the diagram opposite). B/A must be more than 0.45 in the center and more than 0.3 at each end of the waveform.
- 8. Tighten the lens securing screw.



| Step | ltem | Procedure | |
|------|-------------------|---|--|
| 5 | Reduction Rate | Access the SBU as explained in "Preparation" above. Set the oscilloscope scale to 0.2 V/unit (vertical) and 0.5 ms/unit (horizontal). Connect the oscilloscope probe to XVIDEO and the ground to GND. Light the fluorescent lamps (see page 2-33). Place the 200 dpi test pattern on the exposure glass. Loosen the lens block securing screws [A]. Move the lens block [B] back and forth until the signal has 8 or fewer crosspoints. Tighten the lens block securing screws. Note: Tighten each screw little by lit- tle alternately. | |

| Step | Item | Procedure | |
|------|-----------|---|-------|
| 6 | Scan Line | Access the SBU as explained in "Preparation" above. Set the oscilloscope scale to 0.2 V/unit (vertical) and 0.5 ms/unit (horizontal). Light the fluorescent lamps (see page 2-33). Connect the oscilloscope probe to XVIDEO and the ground to GND. Place the scan line test chart [A] on the exposure glass as shown. Loosen the SBU securing screws (see procedure 1). Adjust the waveform with the adjust- ing knobs until the waveform is as shown on the right. | |
| | | | U.DMS |

| Step Item Procedure | |
|--|---|
| Scan Start Position Access the SBU as explained in "Preparation" above. Set the oscilloscope scale to 0.2 V/unit (vertical) and 0.5 ms/unit (horizontal). tight the fluorescent lamps. Place the scan line test chart [A the exposure glass as shown. Connect the oscilloscope to the lead as follows: Channel 1 to XVIDEO, channel 2 to SH, groun GND. Set the oscilloscope scales as for lows: Vertical - CH1 0.2 V/unit, C 2 V/unit; Horizontal - 2 µs/unit. Gently tap the SBU until the waveform is as shown on the rig The peak of XVIDEO must be w 4 bits of the peak of SH. Reset the oscilloscope to the original settings and repeat proof dure 6 (scan line) on the previou page. It may be necessary to recheck procedures 6 and 7 unt the scan line is perfectly positior Tighten the SBU securing screw | h thin be- le s h thin be- le s h thin be- ls s h thin s. |

-

| Step | Item | Procedure | |
|------|-------------|---|--|
| 8 | White Level | Access the SBU as explained in "Preparation" above. Set the oscilloscope scale to 0.2 V/unit (vertical) and 0.5 ms/unit (horizontal). Light the fluorescent lamps (see page 2-33). Remove all charts from the scanner and close the so Keep the lamps on for more than 2 minutes. Adjust VR1 until the maximum white level is 1.5 Vol | O2 V/div. 0.5 ms/div. Scanner cover. |

- 3-2-6. Tx Motor Timing Belt Adjustment
- 1. Remove cover [A] (1 screw).
- 2. Remove cover [B].
- 3. Loosen both screws [C] on the belt tensioner [D].
- 4. Push the tensioner until the tension of both belts is acceptable.
- 5. Tighten both screws [C].
- 6. Reassemble the machine.



3-3. Printer - Charge

- 3-3-1. Charge Corona Wire
- 1. Remove the operation panel (see section 3-1-2).
- 2. Slide out the master unit.
- Caution: Do not expose the master unit to light.
 - Keep it in a shaded place and cover it with paper.
 - Do not touch the master belt surface.
- 3. Remove the gas spring tightener ring.
- 4. Remove the front inner cover (see section 3-1-6).
- 5. Remove the front master unit guide rail [A] (3 screws).
- 6. Remove the ozone duct [B] (3 screws).



- 7. Remove the charge corona unit [C] (3 screws).
- When you put back the gas spring tightener ring, the clearance [A] must be 0.2 +/- 0.1 mm (see section 3-11).
- 9. Prize off the front endblock cover [D].
- 10. Carefully slide off the rear endblock cover [E].
- 11. Unhook the corona wire from the tension spring inside the rear endblock cover.
- 12. Unhook the corona wire from the screw in the front endblock cover.

Note: Do not remove the screw.

Reassembly:

- Do not touch the new corona wire with your bare hands.
- Hook the new corona wire into the rear endblock first.
- Set the corona wire in the front endblock groove [F].
- After installing both ends of the new wire, test the action of the tension spring.



WARNING

Switch off the main power before attempting any of the procedures in this section. Laser beams can seriously damage the eyes.

- 3-4-1. Second Cylindrical Lens
- 1. Open the upper unit.
- 2. Remove plate [B] (1 screw).
- 3. Slide out the lens [A].
- Cautions: When installing a new lens, make sure that the screw on the lens handle faces down.
 - Do not touch the surface of the new lens.
 - If you need to clean the lens, use an air brush, or a soft dry cloth.



3-4-2. Pentagonal Mirror and Motor

- 1. Open the upper unit.
- 2. Slide out the master unit.
- Caution: Do not expose the master unit to light.
 - Keep it in a shaded place and cover it with paper.
 - Do not touch the master belt surface.
- 3. Remove the printer fan [A].
 - Remove the upper rear cover (see section 3-1-3).
 - Remove the printer fan drive pulley [B] (1 screw).
 - Remove the printer fan (remove 2 screws and spring plates [C] to take out the fan).



- 4. Remove plate [D] (4 screws).
- 5. Disconnect the motor from the drive board [E].
- 6. Remove the mirror and motor [F] (2 screws).

Note:

- · Do not touch the faces of the mirror.
- If you need to clean the mirror, use an air brush or a soft dry cloth.
- The gap [G] between the printer fan drive gear and the rear bracket must be 0.2 mm (see the previous page).



- 3-4-3. Pentagonal Mirror Motor Driver (SMDR)
- 1. Do steps 1 to 5 of section 3-4-2.
- 2. Remove the SMDR board [F] (3 screws).

- 3-4-4. LSD
- 1. Remove the front inner cover (see section 3-1-6)
- 2. Remove the LSD [A] (1 connector, 2 screws).

Cautions:

- Do not touch the screws [B] on the LSD holder, or the sensor on the new LSD will be misaligned.
- After replacement, make a test copy. If the copy is not centered, loosen the screws
 [B] and tap the LSD slightly to one side (the adjustment is sensitive). Make another test copy and readjust if necessary.





WARNING: SWITCH OFF THE MAIN POWER.

- 1. Remove the document tray.
- 2. Remove the upper rear cover (see section 3-1-3).
- 3. Slide out the master unit.

Cautions:

- · Do not expose the master unit to light.
- Keep it in a shaded place and cover it with paper.
- · Do not touch the master belt surface.
- 4. Remove cover [A] (1 screw).
- 5. Disconnect the harness at the LDDR board.
- 6. Remove the laser diode unit [B] (2 screws).

No adjustment is needed after replacement if the laser diode unit is screwed in properly.



- 3-5-1. Upper Paper Feed and Pick-up Rollers
- 1. Take out the development unit (see section 3-6-1).
- 2. Remove the rollers (1 clip each).

Do not touch the surface of the new rollers or paper feed errors will develop sooner than normal.

- 3-5-2. Upper Paper Separation Roller and Spring Clutch
- 1. Take out the cassette then the development unit (see section 3-6-1).
- 2. Remove the feed and pick-up rollers (1 clip each).
- 3. Remove the separation roller ass'y [A] (2 screws).
- 4. Take out the roller and spring clutch ass'y $\left[B\right] .$
- 5. Remove the roller [C] (1 E-ring).

After installing the new roller, make sure that it pokes through the larger opening in the separation roller bracket.

Note: Do not touch the surface of the new rollers or paper feed errors will develop sooner than normal.



- 3-5-3. Lower Paper Feed and Pick-up Rollers
- 1. Take out the cassettes.
- 2. Remove the paper feed and pick-up rollers (1 clip each).
- 3-5-4. Lower Paper Separation Roller
- 1. Take out the cassettes.
- Remove the separation roller cover plate [A] (2 screws).
- 3. Take off the separation roller assembly [B] (1 clip).
- 4. Pull off the separation roller [C].



- 3-5-5. Master Belt Drive Motor Timing Belt Adjustment
- 1. Open the upper unit.
- 2. Remove the rear inner cover (see section 3-1-5).
- Move the belt tensioner [A] until its edge is flush with the edge of the master belt motor bracket, then tighten the screw.
- 3-5-6. Upper Paper Lift Mechanism Adjustment
- 1. Remove the rear cover.
- 2. Loosen screw [A].
- Contact the pawl to the sector gear by pushing the upper paper lift solenoid actuator into the solenoid.
- 4. lighten screw [A].





3-6. Printing - Development

- 3-6-1. Development Unit
- 1. Remove the upper cassette and open the right cover.
- 2. Remove plate [A] (2 screws).
- 3. Take out the development unit [B] and lay it on a flat surface covered with newspaper.
- 3-6-2. Toner Metering Blade
- 1. Take out the development unit.
- 2. Remove the toner cartridge [A].
- 3. Remove the toner metering blade [B] (2 screws).

Cautions:

- Do not touch, bend, or damage the new blade.
- · Do not touch the development roller.
- Do not scrape the blade against the development roller.





3-6-3. Development Roller

- 1. Take out the development unit and toner metering blade (see the previous page).
- 2. Remove the rear development unit cover [A] (1 screw).
- 3. Remove the bias brush cover [B] (3 pins).
- 4. Take out the bias brush [C].
- Remove the idle gear [D] (1 E-ring) then the development roller gear [E] (1 E-ring).
- 6. Remove the E-ring and bearing at each end of the development roller [F].
- 7. Remove the front side of the toner hopper [G] (2 E-rings, 3 screws).
- 8. Slide out the development roller.

Reinstallation

- Do not touch the surface of the new development roller.
- Make sure that the bristles of the bias brush are tucked under the leading edge of the development roller.



- 3-7-1. Transfer Corona Wire
- 1. Open the upper unit and take out the master unit.

Caution:

- · Do not expose the master unit to light.
- Keep it in a shaded place and cover it with paper.
- Do not touch the master belt surface.
- 2. Remove the terminal block [A] (2 screws).
- 3. Remove bracket [B] (1 screw).
- 4. Remove tab [C] (1 screw).
- 5. Remove the transport guide plate (see section 3-10-5). One of the 5 screws has a ground wire.

To remove this guide plate, you will need to push the transfer corona unit towards the development unit.

6. Carefully disconnect connector [D] at the power pack (use long-nosed pliers).



- 7. Remove the transfer corona unit [E].
- 8. Remove the nylon wire [F] (1 screw at each end).
- 9. Prize off the front endblock cover [G] then carefully slide off the rear endblock cover [H].
- 10. Unhook the corona wire [I] from the tension spring in the rear endblock and from the screw in the front endblock (do not remove the screw).

Reassembly

- Do not touch the new corona wire with your bare hands.
- Hook the new corona wire onto the rear endblock first.
- Set the corona wire in the front endblock groove.
- Check the action of the tension spring after installing the new wire.
- · Rethread the nylon wire.
- To replace the corona unit, make sure that it is positioned correctly on the two springs. Push down fairly hard to get it back in position. While holding down the corona unit, put back the transport guide plate.



- 3-7-2. Transfer Entrance Guide Plate Adjustment
- 1. Remove the front and rear covers.
- 2. Make sure that there is a master unit in the machine.
- 3. Close the upper unit.
- 4. Tighten the screw [A] at each end of the transfer entrance guide plate (access the screws through the front and rear sides of the machine).
- Note: If this is not adjusted correctly, the following may occur:
 - Copy jam
 - · Poor copy quality
 - Master belt damage
 - · Loose toner in the registration area



3-8. Printer - Fusing

- 3-8-1. Fusing Unit
- 1. Remove the upper front cover (see section 3-1-1)
- 2. Remove cover [A] (1 screw).
- 3. Remove cover [B] (1 screw).
- 4. Open the copy feed-out cover [C].
- 5. Remove bracket [D] (3 screws).
- Unhook spring [E] from the upper unit interlock switch [F].
- 7. Remove retaining bracket ass'y [G] (3 screws).
- 8. Open the upper unit and take out the master unit.

Caution:

- · Do not expose the master unit to light.
- Keep it in a shaded place and cover it with paper.
- Do not touch the master belt surface.



 Remove two screws (see section 3-4-2; remove screws [C]) and lift off the spring plates underneath, one at the front and one at the rear of the fan assembly.

Note: Do not remove or disassemble the fan.

- 10. Remove the transport guide plate (see section 3-10-5). One of the 5 screws is grounded.
- 11. Disconnect the fusing unit harness [H] at the PSU.
- 12. Remove 2 screws [I], lift up the right-hand end of the printer fan ass'y, and slide out the fusing unit from the copy exit.

Reassembly

Clearance [G] (see section 3-4-2) must be 0.2 + -0.1 mm.





3-8-2. Thermostat

- 1. Remove the fusing unit (see section 3-8-1).
- 2. Unhook 4 clamps [A].
- 3. Remove screw [B].
- 4. Remove the thrmostat [C] (2 screws).
- 3-8-3. Fusing Lamp/Thermistor Assembly
- 1. Remove the thermostat (see section 3-8-2).
- 2. Unhook the other clamps.
- 3. Remove the connector [D] (2 screws).
- 4. Remove support brackets [E] at the front and rear.
- 5. Slide out the fusing lamp.



3-8-4. Hot Roller

- 1. Remove the fusing lamp/thermistor ass'y (see section 3-8-3).
- 2. Remove drive gear [A] and the bushing at the rear (1 C-ring).
- 3. Remove bushing [B] at the front (1 C-ring).
- 4. Slide out the hot roller [C] as shown.

Reinstalling:

- Do not take the paper off the new roller until the roller has been installed. The paper prevents damage to the roller during installation.
- Do not hit or scratch the teflon coating on the new roller.



3-8-5. Pressure Roller

- 1. Remove the hot roller carefully (see section 3-8-4). Put the roller in a safe place.
- 2. Lift out the pressure roller [A], and take off the E-ring, bushing and washer at each end.

Reinstalling:

- Do not take the paper off the new roller until the roller has been installed. The paper prevents damage to the roller during installation.
- Do not hit or scratch the surface of the new roller.

3-8-6. Hot Roller Strippers

It is advisable to replace them all as a set. There is no need to remove the fusing unit.

For a diagram, see the next page.

- 1. Remove cover [A] (2 screws).
- 2. Open the feed-out ass'y.
- 3. Remove guide plate [B] (2 screws).
- 4. Remove cover [C] (3 screws).



- Close the feed-out ass'y and remove the antistatic brush and holder [D] (2 screws).
- 6. Open the feed-out ass'y.
- 7. Move guide plate [E] out of the way.
- 8. Unhook the springs from the hot roller strippers.
- 9. Take out the hot roller strippers [F]; push down on the retaining bar [G] while taking them out.

Reinstalling:

- The bristles on the antistatic brush should be pointing down.
- The three indentations in the top of the antistatic brush holder must match the positions of the screw holes in the upper copy feed-out cover [C].
- The clip on the center of the side of the fusing unit must clip onto the lower copy exit cover [A] before the cover is screwed in.



3-9. Printer - Quenching

- 3-9-1. Quenching Lamp
- 1. Remove the operation panel (see section 3-1-2).
- 2. Remove the front inner cover (see page 3-4).
- 3. Remove the quenching lamp (1 screw, 1 connector).



- 3-10-1. SPU, VPU, G3CCU, and Modem
- 1. Remove the upper front cover (see section 3-1-1).
- 2. Remove plate [A] (6 screws).
- 3. Remove plate [B] (15 screws, 2 connectors).
- 4. Remove the G4 harness terminating block and bracket [C] (2 screws).
- Remove the modem [D] (2 clips) and G3CCU [E] (4 stand-off screws, 2 connectors).
- 6. Remove the VPU [F] (1 screw, 1 connector, 1 clip).
- 7. Remove the SPU [G] (3 stand-off screws, 8 screws, 17 connectors).





3-10-2. SCU and MBU

Notes for MBU replacement

- Print the service monitor report (service function 06).
- Make sure that the battery switch of the new MBU is on.
- 1. Remove the modem and G3CCU (see p. 3-43).
- 2. Remove the SCU [H] and MBU [I] assembly (3 screws). Note how the SCU fits into the slot at the back.

Note: If the same MBU will be reinstalled, do not switch off the battery switch on the MBU.

After MBU replacement

- · Turn off the battery switch on the old MBU.
- Initialize the RAM on the new MBU by turning off the battery switch for a few seconds. Don't forget to switch it back on afterwards.
- Reprogram the hard disk bad sectors (see page 1-25). There is no need to reformat the disk during reformatting, all other bad sectors will be detected automatically.
- Reprogram the date and time (user function 87) and the serial number (service function 08).



3-10-3. UIB

- 1. Remove the document table (see section 3-1-5).
- 2. Remove two connectors [A].
- 3. Remove the UIB cover [B] (4 screws).
- 4. Remove the UIB [C] (4 screws, 8 connectors).

3-10-4. DSB

- 1. Remove the document table (see section 3-1-5).
- 2. Remove the document guide plate ([E] in section 3-2-1, "Document Feed and Pick-up Rollers").
- 3. Remove the UIB cover [A] (4 screws).
- 4. Remove the DSB [B] (4 screws, 6 connectors).


3-10-5. DRU

- 1. Open the upper unit.
- 2. Remove the transport guide plate [A] (5 screws, 1 earth wire).
- 3. Remove the DRU [B] (4 screws, 7 connectors).
- 3-10-6. Power Pack

See the next page for a diagram.

- 1. Remove the upper front cover (see section 3-1-1).
- 2. Remove 2 plates ([A] and [B] in section 3-10-1).
- 3. Open the upper unit and take out the master unit.

Caution:

- · Do not expose the master unit to light.
- Keep it in a shaded place and cover it with paper.
- Do not touch the master belt surface.
- 4. Take out the development unit.



- 5. Take the charge corona power terminal [A] out of the terminal block (1 screw).
- 6. Remove the terminal block [B] (2 screws).
- 7. Carefully disconnect the transfer corona power terminal [C]; use long-nosed pliers.
- 8. Remove the bias terminal [D] (1 screw).
- 9. Remove the right cover [E] (1 screw at the rear hinge).
- 10. Remove the power pack [F] (1 screw, 1 connector, and slide out the power pack).



3-10-7. PSU

- 1. Remove the transport guide plate (see section 3-10-5).
- 2. Remove the 5 connectors and the earth wire (see the top figure on the right).
- 3. Remove the lower left cover (see section 3-1-1).
- Remove the PSU [A] (5 screws, three of which are under cables on top of the PSU).

When sliding in the new PSU, take care not to damage the cables.

3-10-8. Hard Disk

See the next page for a diagram.

Before switching off the power, return the hard disk head to its shipping position if possible (see page 1-39).

1. Remove the transport guide plate (see section 3-10-5).



- 2. Remove the ozone filter (note that the end with the green mark goes at the rear of the machine).
- 3. Remove the DRU and its bracket [A] (3 screws).
- 4. Remove 2 screws [B] under the cables on top of the hard disk.
- 5. Remove the lower left cover (see section 3-1-1).
- 6. Remove the hard disk fan [C] (1 screw).
- Remove the hard disk [D] (2 screws, 3 connectors). Handle the hard disk carefully, and return it for servicing.

Replacement

- Support the PCB on the hard disk when plugging the power connection back in.
- Program the bad sectors on the hard disk and format the hard disk (see page 1-25).





3-10-9. G3NCU

- 1. Remove the rear cover (see section 3-1-3).
- 2. Remove the top cover (see section 3-1-4).
- Remove the NCU/shield cover ass'y (3 connectors, 5 screws, one of which is grounded).
- 4. Remove the G3NCU [A] (4 screws).

3-10-10. LIB

- 1. Open the lower front cover.
- 2. Remove bracket [A] (2 screws).
- 3. Remove the LIB [B] (3 screws, 5 connectors).



3-10-11. BSRU

- 1. Access the machine from the rear.
- 2. Open the upper unit.
- 3. Remove the bar code reader [A] if installed.
- 4. Remove the BSRU cover [B] (3 screws).
- 5. Remove the BSRU [C] (4 screws, 1 connector).

3-11. Others

3-11-1. Gas Spring Adjustment

If the gas spring is removed at any time, do the following adjustment when replacing the spring.

Clearance [A] must be 0.2 +/-0.1 mm





SECTION 4

SERVICE TABLES

SECTION 4. SERVICE TABLES

| 4-1. PM Table | 4-1 |
|--|-----|
| 4-2. General Service Tables | 4-3 |
| 4-2-1. Test Points | 4-3 |
| 4-2-2. Variable Resistors and Capacitors | 4-5 |
| 4-2-3. Switches | 4-5 |
| 4-2-4. LED Indicators | 4-5 |
| 4-2-5. Jumpers | 4-7 |
| 4-2-6. Special Tools and Lubricants | 4-9 |

1. Scanner

| Part | Clean | Lubricate | Replace | Remarks |
|-------------------|-------|-----------|---------|---------|
| Separation Roller | 10K | | 30K | |
| Pick-up Roller | 10K | | 30K | |
| Feed Roller | 10K | | 30K | |
| R1 Roller | 10K | | | |
| R2 Roller | 10K | | | |
| Exposure Glass | 10K | | | |
| Pressure Plate | 10K | | | |

2. Printer and Upper Paper Feed Mechanism

| Part | Clean | Lubricate | Replace | Remarks |
|---------------------------|-------|-----------|---------|---------|
| Separation Roller | 10K | | 30K | |
| Pick-up Roller | 10K | | 30K | |
| Feed Roller | 10K | | 30K | |
| Separation Torque Limiter | | 30K | | G40H |
| Pick-up Roller Clutch | | 30K | | G40H |
| Registration Roller | 10K | | | |
| Transfer Corona Unit | 10K | | | |
| Charge Corona Unit | 10K | | | |

Continued on the next page

2. Printer and Upper Paper Feed Mechanism (Continued)

| Part | Clean | Lubricate | Replace | Remarks |
|---|--------------------------|-------------------|--|---|
| Master Unit Toner Collection Tank Development Unit Ozone Filter Thermistor Thermostat Hot Roller Strippers Cleaning Pad Hot Roller Pressure Roller (Fusing Unit) Printer Fan Belt | 30K 30K 10K | | 7K 21K 60K 7K 60K 60K 30K 60K 60K 30K | |
| 3. Lower Paper Feed Mechanism | | | | |
| Part | Clean | Lubricate | Replace | Remarks |
| Separation Roller Pick-up Roller Feed Roller Other Rollers Pick-up Cam Ratchet Pawl Separation Torque Limiter Paper Feed Clutch | 10K 10K 10K 10K | 30K 30K 30K | 30K 30K 30K | Alcohol Alcohol Alcohol Alcohol NF-46 Mobil Temp 78 Mobil Temp 78 |

4-2. General Service Tables

4-2-1. Test Points

1. SCU TP1 - Drive clock (8 MHz): system, main cpu TP2 - Drive clock (3.072 MHz): buzzer timer, bar code reader TP3 - + 5V TP4 - COM1 (Ground) 2. SPU TP1 - COM1 (Ground) TP2 - Drive clock (8 MHz): SPU system, ADCR1 (VPU), hard disk controller TP3 - Slave cpu drive clock (16 MHz) TP4 - COM1 (Ground) TP5 - Data for printing (to the laser diode) TP6 - Transfer clock (4.0748 MHz) for printed data TP7 - + 5V 3. MBU TP1 - Drive clock (32.768 kHz): Real time clock TP2 - Used when adjusting VC1 TP3 - COM1 (Ground) TP4 - + 5V

4. UIB

- TP1 Laser main scan start sync signal, from LSD
- TP2 COM1 (Ground)
- TP3 Laser power feedback signal (XLPDET, from LDDR)

TP4 - + 5V COM1 - Ground

- 5. LIB
- TP1 COM1 (Ground)
- TP2 COM3 (Ground)
- 6. DSB
- TP1 + 5V
- TP2 COM1 (Ground)
- 7. DRU
- TP1 COM1 (Ground)
- TP2 + 5V 8. VPU
- TP1 COM2 (Ground) TP2 - Video signal output
- TP3 COM1 (Ground)
- 9. SBU
- VIDEO Video signal (XVIDEO)
- SH CCD drive clock (main scan start sync)
- COM2 Ground GND - Ground

10. LDDR

- TP1 + 12V supply
- TP 2, 3, 4 Factory use only
- TP5 XLPDET (laser power feedback signal)
- 11. LSD
- TP1 COM1 (Ground)
- TP2 1LSDET (laser main scan synchronization signal)
- 12. G3CCU
- TP1 + 5V
- TP2 COM1 (Ground)
- TP3 COM2 (Ground)
- TP4 Not used
- TP5 Not used
- TP6 Received data (RXL, output to modem)
- TP7 Voice message tx signal, from voice message processor
- TP8 Not used
- TP9 Not used
- TP10 COM2 (Ground)
- TP11 Received data (HYBRXL, input from G3NCU)
- TP12 Not used
- TP13 Not used
- TP14 Not used

- 13. G3NCU
- TP1 HYBTXL COM (Ground)
- TP2 Data for transmission (HYBTXL, from G3CCU)
- TP3 HYBRXL COM (Ground)
- TP4 Received data (HYBRXL, to G3CCU)
- TP5 Arrestor ground
- TP6 COM1 (Ground)

4-2-2. Variable Resistors and Capacitors

1. SCU VR1 - Buzzer volume control 2 MBU VC1 - Real time clock drive frequency adjustment 3. SBU VR1 - White level adjustment 4. G3CCU VR1 - Not used VR2 - Not used 5. G3NCU VR1. 2 - Do not touch VR3 - Tx level adjustment (range = 4 dB) 6. Power Pack All controls - Do not touch 7. LDDR VB1 - Do not touch

4-2-3. Switches

1. MBU SW1 - Battery switch 2. DSB SW1 - Scanner cover switch 3. G3CCU SW1 - Not used 4-2-4. LED Indicators

- 1. SPU
- LED 1 Factory use only
- LED 2 On = VPU FIFO reset
- LED 3 Copy feed-out sensor; Off = Paper present, On = No paper
- LED 4 Registration sensor; Off = Paper present, On = No paper
- LED 5 On = Upper paper feed clutch on, Off = Upper paper feed clutch off
- LED 6 On = Registration clutch on, Off = Registration clutch off
- LED 7 On = Transfer corona unit off,
 - Off = Transfer corona unit on
- LED 8 On = Charge corona unit off, Off = Charge corona unit on

LEDs 2 to 8 light up cyclically if there is an Auto Service Call condition.

2. UIB

- LED 1 On: Upper unit CPU running
- LED 2 On: + 12V supply is present at the LDDR
- LED 3 On: Pentagonal mirror motor is running

3. G3CCU

- LED 1 Not used
- LED 2 On: Line current polarity, output 1 activated
- LED 3 On: Line current polarity, output 2 activated
- LED 4 On: Interrupt processing in progress (modem or SCU handshake)
- LEDs 5 to 8 Most recent response sent to main cpu (on the SCU)
- LED 8 7 6 5 Response
 - 0 0 0 0 Status inquiry
 - 0 0 0 1 Ringing signal detected, request start rx mode
 - 0 0 1 0 Line connected
 - 0 0 1 1 Transmission request
 - 0 1 0 0 Transmit mode (tx protocol start)
 - 0 1 0 1 Transmission start (tx data start)
 - 0 1 1 0 Transmission end (RTC)
 - 0 1 1 1 Transmission check (end-of-page signal)
 - 1 0 0 0 Polling request
 - 1 0 0 1 Reception request
 - 1 0 1 0 Receive mode (rx protocol start)
 - 1 0 1 1 Reception start (rx data start)
 - 1 1 0 0 Reception end (RTC)
 - 1 1 0 1 Reception check (end-of-page signal)
 - 1 1 1 0 DCN sent; dc loop open request

4-2-5. Jumpers

Do not touch any of the jumpers inside this machine, except the following jumpers on the G3NCU. Configure these jumpers in accordance with the location of installation.

| Jumper | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 78 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 |
|------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| W. Germany | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 | No. 1 | 0 | Х | Х | 0 | Х | 0 | Х | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| U.K. | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 | No. 1 | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | X | 0 | Х | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Italy | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 | No. 1 | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | Х | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Austria | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 | No. 1 | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | Х | Х | Х | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Belgium | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 | No. 1 | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | Х | Х | Х | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Denmark | 0 | 0 | Х | Х | Х | 0 | No. 2 | Х | Х | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | Х | Х | Х | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Finland | 0 | Х | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 | No. 1 | Х | Х | 0 | 0 | Х | Х | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Ireland | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | Х | 0 | No. 1 | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Norway | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | Х | 0 | No. 1 | Х | Х | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | Х | Х | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 |

Continued on the next page

| Jumper | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 78 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 |
|-------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| Sweden | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 | No. 3 | Х | Х | Х | Х | Х | 0 | Х | Х | Х | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Switzerland | Х | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 | Х | No. 1 | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | Х | Х | Х | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Portugal | 0 | 0 | Х | Х | Х | 0 | No. 1 | 0 | Х | Ο | 0 | Х | 0 | Х | Х | Х | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Netherlands | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 | No. 1 | Х | Х | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | Х | Х | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Hong Kong | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 | No. 3 | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Х | Х | Х | Х | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| S. Africa | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 | No. 1 | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 | Х | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

Key: O = Shorted, X = Open

For an explanation of No. 1, No. 2, and No. 3 in the columns for jumpers 7 and 8, see below.



4-2-6. Special Tools and Lubricants

| H0089503 |
|---------------------|
| A0129110 |
| H0069600 |
| H0081223 (torque) |
| H0081224 (pressure) |
| |

SECTION 5

TROUBLESHOOTING

SECTION 5. TROUBLESHOOTING

| 5-1. Quality Checks 5-1 | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Copy Quality 5-1 | |
| 1. Copy Density 5-2 | |
| 2. Skew 5-2 | |
| 3. Intelligibility | |
| 4. Copy Test 5-2 | |
| 2. Operation Panel Display 5-3 | |
| 3. Mechanism Test | |
| 4. Communication Tests | |
| 5-2. Copy Quality Troubleshooting 5-4 | |
| 5-3. Mechanical Problems | З |
| 5-4. Service Call Conditions 5-41 | |
| 5-5. Error Codes | З |

| 5-6. Hard Disk Troubleshooting Routines . | . 5-64 |
|---|--------|
| 1. Outline | 5-64 |
| 2. Entering and Exiting Hard Disk | |
| Troubleshooting Mode | 5-65 |
| 3. Functions | 5-65 |
| 3-1. System Start - Function 1 | . 5-65 |
| 3-2. Error Code Display - Function 2 | . 5-66 |
| 3-3. File Correction - Function 3 | . 5-67 |
| 3-4. Random Read Test - Function 4 | . 5-67 |
| 3-5. All Read Test - Function 5 | . 5-67 |
| 3-6. Clear Address - Function 6 | . 5-68 |
| 3-7. Clear Job - Function 7 | . 5-68 |
| 3-8. Disk Format - Function 8 | . 5-69 |
| 4. Error Codes | . 5-70 |
| 4-1. Power-up Error Codes | . 5-70 |
| 4-2. Hard Disk Error Codes | . 5-71 |

5-1. Quality Checks

During troubleshooting, the quality checks in this section may help find the problem. These checks should also be done when installing a new machine, in order to discover any defects that may be present.

1. Copy Quality

The test chart shown on this page is used for the copy quality checks explained on the following pages.

1. Copy Density

Density must be equal in the left, right, and center. If it is not, adjust the alignment (see page 3-12).

2. Skew

Copy a test chart using standard resolution.

The difference between A and B (see the diagram on page 5-1) must be as follows. A4 [8.5" x 11.7"] or larger: Less than 1% of the document length Smaller than A4: Less than 3% of the document length

To correct skew, see page 5-28.

3. Intelligibility

Copy a test chart using standard resolution. Check the characters in frame F (see page 5-1). No characters must be missing. If some of the characters are illegible, check and adjust the following: alignment (see page 3-12), reduction rate (see page 3-15), focusing (see page 3-14).

4. Copy Test

Make another copy. If the copy is still defective, make a printer test (see page 2-32) and check the video waveforms if necessary (see pages 3-11 to 3-18).

2. Operation Panel Display

See page 2-34.

3. Mechanism Test

Check the operation of the document feed and printing mechanism. See section 5-3 (Machine Operation) if there are any problems.

4. Communication Tests

- Call a remote unit and send 2 test charts, one in standard, and one in detail resolution. If the remote unit can accept 8 x 15.4 (Fine) resolution, also send one in Fine resolution. (Note that Fine resolution in the Rapicom 610 or 830 is 16 x 15.4 and not the same as Fine resolution in the FAX105.) Check the following: resolution selection, RTI display, voice request function.
- 2. Receive 2 test charts.

Check the following: RTI display, copy quality, automatic reception function, voice request function.

5-2. Copy Quality Troubleshooting

If there is a copy quality problem, try the DCR test (service function 09, mode 5; see page 2-36). If the problem cannot be solved easily, try using the following troubleshooting flow chart, while referring to the point-topoint diagram and signal tables. The flow chart may not be exhaustive, but it may help you to find the problem.

| Symptom | Action |
|-----------------------|--|
| Blank or faint copies | Make a printer test (service function 09, mode 0). Is the printout normal? Y N Adjust the transfer guide plate (page 3-35). Are the charge or transfer corona units and wires installed badly or broken? (Charge corona wire operation can be checked with service function 09, mode 6.) If there is a faint image, the transfer corona unit may be defective. Y N Does CN17-10 on the SPU (1TRLEK) go high? If so, clean the transfer corona unit, removing any foreign objects that could cause a leak. |
| | Check that the following connectors are not loose: SPU CN9 and 10 - PSU CN1 and 2, SPU CN17 - Power pack. Are the + 24V supplies to the power pack and trigger signals present? Y N Replace the SPU or SCU. Replace the power pack. Reset the defective corona wire. If the problem is not solved, check the trigger and power signals again, then check the varistor. Is the varistor intact (Y) or shorted(N)?. (Continued on the next page) |

| Y N Change the varistor. |
|--|
| The laser beam may not be responding to the data signal, and may be continuously exposing the master. Check that the following connections are not loose: SPU CN4 - UIB CN6, UIB CN8 - LDDR. Does the data signal at the LDDR (CN1-6) switch on/off normally? Y N Replace the LDDR, UIB, SCU, or SPU. |
| If there is a faint image, there could be a problem with the development unit. Check the development drive mechanism. Clean any dirty components. Does the bias terminal receive -225 V +/- 10 V? Y N Does the power pack receive the trigger signal (SPU CN17-9 to low) and the power signal (SPU CN17-5)? Y N Replace the SPU or SCU. Replace the power pack. Does the development roller attract toner? Y N Clean the roller. Replace it if necessary. Check that the following connectors are not loose: SPU CN5 - DRU CN3 DRU CN1. Does the development clutch operate? Y N Replace either the development clutch, the DRU, the SPU, or the SCU. |
| |

| Symptom | Action |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Blank or faint copies (continued) | 2. If there is nothing wrong with the printer, check the scanner. Check that the connections from the SBU - VPU and from VPU - SPU are not loose. Is there a video signal from the SBU, and is the white level normal? Y N Adjust the white level. Beplace the SBU, VPU, SPU, or SCU. |
| | if necessary. |
| | 3. Does the problem only occur when printing from memory?. Y N Go to step 4. |
| | Check that the connections from the SPU and PSU to the hard disk are not loose. Does the PSU send + 5V and + 12V to the hard disk? |
| | Y N Replace the PSU. |
| | If the problem only occurs during transmission or reception, and not in copy or printer test mode, check the connections from the SPU to the CCU, and from the CCU to the modem and NCU, and from the NCU to the line. Check for severe line problems. If the problem cannot be found, replace the CCU, NCU, modem, SPU, or SCU. |

| Symptom | Action |
|------------|---|
| Black copy | 1. Make a printer test (service function 09, mode 0). Is the printout normal? |
| | Y N |
| | Is the master unit properly grounded? |
| | Y N |
| | Check the grounding terminal near the rear of the |
| | machine by the quenching lamp, and check the |
| | grounding plate on the master unit. Clean or replace |
| | the defective part. |
| | Check that SPU CN17 is not loose. Does the bias terminal receive |
| | -225 +/- 10 V? |
| | Y N |
| | Does the power pack receive the trigger signal |
| | (SPU CN17-9 to low) and the power signal (SPU CN17-5) |
| | Y N |
| | Replace the SPU or SCU. |
| | Replace the power pack. |
| | Is the toner metering blade securely in place? |
| | Y N |
| | Install it properly. |
| | The laser beam may not be reaching the master. Check that the |
| | following connections are not loose: SPU CN4 - UIB CN6, |
| | UIB CN8 - LDDR. Does the data signal at the LDDR (CN1-6, 5LDDAT) |
| | switch on/off normally? |
| | Y N |
| | Replace the LDDR, UIB, SCU, or SPU. |
| | Check the laser optics for broken or dirty components. |
| | Check for condensation on the optics or the master. |
| | (Continued on the next page) |

| Black copy (con- 2. tinued) 3. 4. | There may be a scanner problem. Clean the scanner optics, pressure plate, and exposure glass. Does the fluorescent lamp light properly? Y N Check that the following connections are not loose: SPU CN4 - UIB CN6, UIB CN3 - FI. lamp driver, FI. lamp driver - FI. lar Does the lamp driver receive the + 24V power and trigger signals from the UIB? Y N Replace the UIB, SPU, or SCU. Replace the lamp or driver. Check that the connections from the SBU - VPU and from VPU - SPU are not loose. Is there a video signal from the SBU, and is the white level nor- mal? Y N Adjust the white level. Replace the SBU, VPU, SPU, or SCU if necessa Does the problem only occur when printing from memory? See step 3 of "Blank or faint copy" (page 5-6). If the problem only occurs during transmission or reception, and not in copy or printer test mode, check the CCU, NCU, modem, and line. See step 4 of "Blank or faint copy" (page 5-6). |
|--|--|

| Symptom | Action |
|-------------------|--|
| Low image density | 1. Make a printer test (service function 09, mode 0; see page 2-32). Is the test pattern normal? Y N Try the following Replace the master unit. Check the corona wires. Clean with cotton swabs or replace. Clean the development roller (soft cloth and alcohol). If the paper in the cassette is damp, replace it. If the toner contains dirt or paper particles, throw it out and add fresh toner. Is the varistor intact (Y) or shorted(N)?. Y N Change the varistor. Check that SPU CN17 is not loose. Does the bias terminal receive -225 +/- 10 V? Y N Does the power pack receive the trigger signal (SPU CN17-5) to low) and the power signal (SPU CN17-5)? Y N Replace the power pack. Check the development roller attract toner? Y N Clean the roller. Replace it if necessary. |
| | Continued on the next page |

| Symptom | Action |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Low image density (continued) | Check that the following connectors are not loose: SPU CN5 - DRU CN3, DRU CN1. Does the development clutch operate? Y N Replace either the development clutch, the DRU, the SPU, or the SCU. Does the power pack send trigger signals to the transfer and charge corona wires? (Charge corona wire operation can be checked with service function 09, mode 6.) Y N Change the SCU or SPU. Is there any power at the corona units? Y N Change the power pack. Is there any toner in the toner cartridge? Y N |
| | Check the toner end sensor mechanism. Does SPU CN17-3 go low if the actuator leaves the toner end sensor? |
| | Replace the sensor. |
| | If the Add Toner indicator does not light when there is no toner, replace the SCU, SPU, or OPU. |
| | Clean the white plate used for auto-shading. Check the SBU white level voltage (see page 3-13). |

^{3.} Check the transfer guide plate adjustment (page 3-35).

| Symptom | Action |
|---|--|
| Faint copy at leading or trailing edge | If the paper is curled, correct the curl before installing the cassette. If the paper is damp, change the paper in the cassette. |
| | Instruct the operator how to store paper when it is not to be used for a long time. |
| | Thick or thin paper sometimes makes faint copies. |
| | Instruct the operator to use a recommended brand of paper. |
| Dirty background on 1. entire copy image | If "Call Service" is lit, replace the laser diode unit and the LDDR. |
| 2. | Make a printer test (service function 09, mode 0). Is the printout normal? Y N Reinstall the incorrectly installed master. Replace the master (worn out OPC belt). Clean the quenching lamp. If the toner in the development unit contains dust or paper particles, change the toner. Tighten the toner metering blade securing screws (see page 3-31). Clean the grounding plates on the master unit (there is one on each side of the exposure slit). Clean the grid plate grounding terminal (at the far right corner of the master unit as seen from the paper feed direction). Replace the varistor if it is shorted. Clean the cleaning blade inside the master unit. |

| Symptom | Action |
|---|--|
| Dirty background on entire copy image (continued) | Check that SPU CN17 is not loose. Does the bias terminal receive -225 +/- 10 V? Y N Does the power pack receive the trigger signal (SPU CN17-9 to low) and the power signal (SPU CN17-5)? Y N Replace the SPU or SCU. Replace the power pack. Check that the following connections are not loose: SPU CN4 - UIB CN6, UIB CN1 and 7 - DSB CN4 and 5, DSB CN2 - Quenching lamp. Does the quenching lamp operate correctly? Y N Does the DSB output the drive and power signals on CN2? Y N Does the DSB output the drive and power signals on CN2? Y N Does the UIB send the drive and power signal to the DSB? Y N Replace the QUB, SPU, or SCU. Replace the Quenching lamp. Clean the laser optics carefully with a blower brush or soft dry cloth. Continued on the next page |

| Symptom | Action |
|---|--|
| Dirty background on entire copy image (continued) | Does the power pack send trigger signals to the transfer and charge corona wires? (Charge corona wire operation can be checked with service function 09, mode 6.) Y N Change the SCU or SPU. Is there any power at the corona units? Y N Change the power pack. 3. Clean the scanner optics and the exposure glass. Adjust the bit switches containing contrast threshold levels. Adjust the SBU output level (see page 3-13). |
| Dirty background with negative image | Clean the cleaning blade or replace the master unit. |
| | |



| Symptom | Action |
|---|---|
| Dirty background after the trailing edge of solid black areas | The quenching lamp may be defective. Check that the following connections are not loose: SPU CN4 - UIB CN6, UIB CN1 and 7 - DSB CN4 and 5, DSB CN2 - Quenching lamp. Does the quenching lamp operate correctly? Y N Does the DSB output the drive and power signals on CN2? |
| L | Does the UIB send the drive and power signal to the DSB Y N Replace the UIB, SPU, or SCU. Replace the DSB. Replace the quenching lamp. |
| Stray toner flecks fused into the copy | Clean the inside of the machine. Clean the cleaning blade. Check the transfer entrance guide plate (see page 3-35). Clean the fusing unit hot roller and pressure roller. Replace the master (worn out OPC belt or defective cleaning blade). Clean the quenching lamp. Does the quenching lamp operate correctly? See "Dirty background after the trailing edge of solid black areas" (this page). |
| Previous copy shows faintly | Clean the master belt. Clean the quenching lamp. Does the quenching lamp operate correctly? See "Dirty background after the trailing edge of solid black areas" (this page). |

| Symptom | Action |
|---|---|
| Uneven Density Type 1 - Density changes gradually across the copy | Make a printer test (service function 09, mode 0; see page 2-32). Is the printout normal? Y N Check that the charge corona wire is clean and that it is installed correctly in the V-slots of the endblocks. Clean the laser optics carefully with a blower brush or soft dry cloth. Clean the scanner optics and exposure glass. Check the SBU output and check scan line alignment (see pages 3-12 and 3-13). Change the fluorescent lamps. |
| Uneven Density Type 2 - Uneven den- sity appears in verti- cal bands | Make a printer test (service function 09, mode 0; see page 2-32). Is the printout normal? Y N Clean the transfer and charge corona wires. Clean the quenching lamp. If the problem remains, clean the laser optics carefully with a blower brush or soft dry cloth. Clean the exposure glass and scanner optics. Change the fluorescent lamps, especially if bands appear only on the sides of a copy made in copy mode. |

| Symptom | Action |
|---|--|
| Uneven Density Type 3 - Horizontal bands | Is there a clear contrast between the bands? Y N Clean the development roller bearings. • Change the fluorescent lamps if they is flickering. • Clean the transfer corona unit. |
| Vertical White Lines or Bands Type 1 - Straight sharp lines | Make a printer test (service function 09, mode 0; see page 2-32). Is the printout normal? Y N Start a copy cycle and stop it before the copy reaches the fusing unit. Do the same lines appear on the unfused copy? Y N • If the surface of the hot roller is scratched, replace the component that is scratching the roller (such as a hot roller stripper) • If the hot roller strippers are badly stained with toner, replace the thermistor (or the PSU, UIB, SPU, or SCU) |
| | replace the thermistor (or the PSU, UIB, SPU, or S |

Continued on the next page.

| Symptom | Action |
|--|--|
| Vertical White Lines or Bands Type 1 - Straight sharp lines (continued) | Is the master belt scratched? Y N • Clean the grid plate. • Clean the toner metering blade - toner may be piling up there. • Add toner if the supply is low. • Follow the procedure for "Uneven Density Type 2 - Vertical bands" (page 5-15). • Correct or replace any parts that scratch the belt. • Change the master unit. |
| | If the problem does not clear, check for foreign objects around the old master that could cause leakage of charge from the master unit. Clean the cleaning blade. Clean the white pressure plate. Check the white waveform for error bits. |
| Vertical White Lines or Bands Type 2 - Fuzzy lines or bands | Clean the corona wires. |
| Symptom | Action |
|--|---|
| Vertical Black Lines or Bands Type 1 - Wavy lines | Replace the master if the cleaning blade is damaged. Pentagonal mirror motor problem - replace the motor. If the problem still occurs, replace the SCU, SPU, or UIB. |
| Vertical Black Lines or Bands Type 2 - Dotted lines or bands | If the master belt is scratched, replace the master unit and the part that is doing the damage. |
| Vertical Black Lines or Bands Type 3 - Band at left or right edge of the copy, su- perimposed on the data | Make a printer test (service function 09, mode 0; see page 2-32). Is the printout normal? Y N Clean the laser optics carefully with a blower brush or soft dry cloth. • Clean the scanner optics. • Replace the fluorescent lamps. |
| 1 | |

| Symptom | Action |
|--|---|
| Vertical Black Lines or Bands Type 4 - Straight lines or bands at constant positions on the copy | Make a printer test (service function 09, mode 0; see page 2-32). Is the printout normal? Y N Start a copy cycle and stop it just before the copy reaches the fusing unit. Does the copy have the same lines on it? |
| A B C D E X Y Z | Y N Clean the thermistor, hot roller, and hot roller strippers. If the hot roller surface is scratched, correct or clean any parts that are damaging the roller, then replace the rolle If the hot roller strippers are badly stained with toner, replace the thermistor (or the UIB, PSU, SPU, or SCU). Replace the master unit if the belt is scratched. Also, correct or replace any parts that may be damaging the belt. |
| | Clean the corona wires. Clean the quenching lamp. Replace the toner metering blade if it is deformed. Clean the laser optics carefully with a blower brush or soft dry cloth. Replace the LSD, UIB, SPU, or SCU. Clean the scanner optics and exposure glass. Check for error bits in the SBU waveform. |
| | |

| Symptom | Action |
|---|---|
| Vertical Black Lines or Bands Type 5 | Clean the master belt with a soft dry cloth carefully, and clean the interior of the machine. Clean the charge corona wire. |
| Dirty margins | Clean the quenching lamp. |



Clean the quenching lamp. Change the master unit. Change the fluorescent lamps. Change the development unit.

Black streaks at the leading edge



Clean the hot roller strippers. Replace the master unit.

| Symptom | Action |
|---|--|
| Black spots at the leading edge | Clean inside the machine, especially the fusing entrance and transfer entrance guide plates. Check that the transfer corona wire is installed properly. Clean the transfer corona wire. Replace the power pack. |
| Horizontal white lines or bands across copies | Does the copy have a crease mark where the white band appears? Y N Clean the transfer corona unit (wire, end blocks, and casing). Check and replace any defective parts that may cause the transfer charge to leak. Check the paper transport mechanism from paper feed through transfer; correct any faults. If the problem only happens on the first copy of a copy run, check whether the master has a horizontal band scratched on it. If it does, check the development clutch and the development roller drive mechanism. Replace any defective components. |

| Symptom | Action |
|--|---|
| Horizontal black stripes | If "Call Service" is lit, replace the LDDR. Check that the toner metering blade is screwed into place properly Check that the master unit is installed correctly and that the master unit is grounded properly. Check that SPU CN17 is not loose. Does the bias terminal receive -225 +/- 10 V? If not, does the power pack receive the trigger signal (SPU CN17-9 to low) and the power signal (SPU CN17-5)? Y N Replace the SPU or SCU. |
| White spots in black areas | Clean the development roller with a soft cloth and alcohol. Clean the transfer corona wire. If the problem cannot be solved, replace the development unit and/or power pack. |
| Black streaks after right-hand edges of black characters | Laser diode circuit defective - replace the LSD, LDDR, UIB, SPU, or SCU. |



| Sym | ptom |
|-----|------|
|-----|------|

Action

Blank areas





Otherwise, change the power pack.



If paper is wrinkled, refer to "Wrinkled Copy" (page 5-28).

Check that the corona wires are clean and properly installed. If that does not solve the problem, change the power pack.

Leading edge missing

- Check that the scan line sensor is positioned correctly.
- Change the SPU or SCU.

| Symptom | Action |
|---------------|--|
| Fuzzy copy | Make a printer test (service function 09, mode 0; see page 2-32). Is the printout normal? Y N Are the charge corona fan (at the rear of the machine) and the front and rear transfer fans operating? Y N Do the fans receive + 24V from the DRU? Y N Replace the DRU, SPU, PSU, or SCU. Replace the defective fan. Change the ozone filter. Replace the master unit. Clean the laser optics carefully with a blower brush or soft dry cloth. Replace the charge corona unit (charge corona wire operation can be checked with service function 09, mode 6). Replace the transfer corona unit. Clean the scanner optics. Adjust focusing and reduction rate (see pages 3-14 and 3-15). |
| Hollowing out | Is the paper damp? Y N • Clean the transfer corona wire. • Replace the power pack if that does not solve the problem. Replace the paper. |

| Symptom | Action |
|--------------|---|
| Hat image | Does the quenching lamp turn on? Y N |
| | Does the lamp receive power and the trigger signal from the DSB? Y N Does the DSB receive + 24VD and the quenching lamp trigger signal from the UIB? Y N Replace the UIB, SPU, or SCU. Replace the DSB. Replace the lamp. • Check that the charge corona wire is correctly installed. • If the problem still occurs, change the power pack. |
| Unfused copy | Clean the thermistor. Change the pressure roller springs. Replace the thermistor, fusing unit, UIB, SPU, SCU, or PSU. |
| Jitter | Make a printer test (service function 09, mode 0; see page 2-32). Is the printout normal? Y N The master belt or main motor drive mechanism (such as motors, gears, timing belts) may be defective. Check the belt tension (see page 3-30). Check all gears and timing belts. Replace the transfer entrance guide plate. The scanner drive mechanism (such as the tx motor, gears, or timing belt) may be defective. Check the belt tension (see page 3-19). |

| Symptom | Action |
|--|--|
| Image enlarged in the sub scan direc- tion | If the problem only occurs in copy mode, it is a scanner problem. If the problem only occurs while receiving, it is a printer problem. |
| | The scanner or printer drive mechanisms (motors, gears, belts, and so on) may be obstructed or defective. (Motor operation can be checked with service function 09, mode 6.) |
| | The tx motor or master belt motor timing belt tension may need adjusting (see pages 3-19 and 3-30). |
| | If the tx motor is making abnormal noise, replace the tx motor, UIB, SPU, or SCU. If the master belt motor is making abnormal noise, replace the motor, DSB, UIB, SPU, or SCU. |
| Magnification or reduction | Adjust the reduction rate (see page 3-15). |
| Filled-in characters | Same as above. |
| Misaligned output - margin of data has been shifted to the left or right. | Make a printer test (service function 09, mode 0; see page 2-32). Is the output normal? Y N The LSD board may be out of position. Adjust as explained on page 3-25 • Adjust the scan start position (see page 3-17). |

Effects of line problems on copy quality

1. Missing lines; shrinkage in the sub scan direction



2. Cut off

- Bad copy sample -

ABCDEEGHTJKIJN 1234567890 UPURSTUWTYZ UMPJESZ (21

Some lines may be missing just before the cut off.

| Symptom | Action |
|---|--|
| Wrinkled copy | Check whether the problem can be solved by using another stack of paper. Check paper transport through the printer and replace the defective component. Replace the fusing unit pressure springs. |
| Soiled copy paper | Clean the paper feed, pick-up, and separation rollers with a soft damp cloth. If the dirt is part of the image, then clean the ADF rollers. Metal rollers - soft cloth and alcohol Rubber rollers - soft cloth and water |
| Dirt along the lead- ing edge on the reverse side | Same as above. Clean the following components: Transfer corona unit and entrance guide plate (damp cloth) Transport guide plate (damp cloth) Registration rollers (soft dry cloth) Feed-out rollers (damp cloth) |
| Skew | Check that paper is correctly stacked in the tray. |
| | If the problem is in the ADF, then: Clean the R1 and R2 rollers (soft cloth and alcohol) Clean the feed, pick-up, and separation rollers (soft cloth and water) Replace the separation roller. Check that the scanner cover switch and actuator are in the correct position. |
| | Continued on the next page |

| Symptom | Action |
|-------------------|--|
| Skew (continued) | If the problem is in the printer, then: • Clean the paper feed, pick-up, and separation rollers (soft cloth and water). Replace if necessary. • Check that the registration clutch operates correctly. |
| Document Jam | Clean the R1 and R2 rollers (soft cloth and alcohol). Clean the feed, pick-up, and separation rollers (soft cloth and water). Check the Tx motor timing belt (see page 3-19). Check the scan line sensor. |
| | Does the UIB receive a signal from the sensor at CN1-5? Y N Does the DSB receive a signal from the sensor at CN3-2? Y N Replace the sensor. Replace the DSB. Replace the UIB, SPU, or SCU. |
| | If the sound is abnormal, check that the scanner is assembled correctly, or replace the Tx motor or UIB. (Motor operation can be checked with service function 09, mode 6.) |
| Document non-feed | Clean the feed and pick-up rollers (soft cloth and water), and check the spring clutches |
| | Continued on the next page |

| Symptom | Action |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Document non-feed (continued) | Does the tx motor turn on? (Motor operation can be checked with service function 09, mode 6.) Y N Does the UIB output the tx motor drive signals? Y N Does the SPU receive + 24VD from the PSU when Copy is pressed? Y N Does 1POWON go high? Y N Does 1POWON go high? Y N Replace the SPU or SCU. Replace the PSU, or the upper unit interlock switch, or the right cover interlock switch. If the SPU does not send + 24VD to the UIB, replace the SPU. Otherwise, replace the UIB. Replace the tx motor. Does the UIB output the ADF clutch drive signal (CN1-1)? Y N Replace the UIB, SPU, or SCU. Does the DSB output the ADF clutch drive signal? Y |
| | Continued on the next page |

| Symptom | Action |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Document non-feed (continued) | Does the SPU receive + 24VD from the PSU when Copy is pressed? Y N Does 1POWON go high? Y N Replace the SPU or SCU. Replace the PSU, or the upper unit interlock switch, or the right cover interlock switch. Trace the + 24VD signal from the SPU to the ADF clutch. Replace the defective component. |
| Document double- feed | Clean and lubricate, or replace the separation roller. |
| Noise from ADF | Clean and lubricate the springs and clutches in the feed and pick-up roller as- sembly and in the separation roller. Replace the tx motor or UIB. |
| | Check that the scattler is assentioned collectly. |

| Symptom | Action |
|---|--|
| Copy Jam | Is the correct type of paper being used? |
| | Is the paper correctly loaded? |
| 1) Paper Feed Entrance - Error Code 907 | Clean the paper feed, pick-up, and separation rollers. Remove any debris from the feed-in area. |
| | Check the registration sensor. Does the DRU receive a signal from the registration sensor? Y N Replace the sensor. Does the SPU receive the signal from the registration sensor? Y N Replace the DRU. Replace the SPU or SCU. |

| Symptom | Action |
|---|--|
| Copy Jam (con- tinued) 2) Registration Area Error Code 908 | Clean the registration rollers (metal roller - soft cloth and alcohol, rubber roller - soft cloth and water) Check the registration sensor and circuit (see Copy Jam Type 1). Check the registration clutch. If it is not working, do the following: |
| | Does the SPU send + 24VD and the drive signal to the DRU? Y N Replace the SPU or SCU. Does the registration clutch receive + 24VD and the drive signal? Y N Replace the DRU. Replace the clutch. |
| 3) Inside the Machine - Error Code 908 | Check the master belt motor timing belt (see page 3-30). Check the transfer entrance guide plate (see page 3-35). Check the fusing unit drive. Replace the pressure roller springs, hot roller, or pressure roller if necessary. Check the copy feed-out sensor and circuit as follows. |
| | Does the DRU receive a signal from the copy feed-out sensor? Y N Replace the sensor. Does the SPU receive the signal from the copy feed-out sensor? Y N Replace the DRU. Replace the SPU or SCU. |
| 4) Copy Exit - Error Code 909 | Clean the copy feed-out rollers. Check the copy feed-out sensor and circuit (see Copy Jam Type 3). |

| Symptom | Action |
|--|---|
| Copy Jam at the lower cassette feed- in area | Clean the lower paper feed, pick-up; and separation rollers. Remove any debris from the feed-in area |
| Copy non-feed - upper cassette | Check that non-feed is not due to another problem (such as "Call Service" being lit power cord not plugged in). |
| | Clean or replace the upper paper feed and pick-up rollers; check the feed mechanism. |
| | Clean and lubricate the feed and pick-up spring clutches. |
| | Clean the separation roller slip clutch. |
| | Remove any debris from the feed-in area. |
| | Does the main motor turn on? (Motor operation can be checked with service function 09, mode 6.) Y |
| | Does the SPU receive + 24VD from the PSU when Copy is pressed? Y N Does 1POWON go high? Y N Perclana the OPU or OOU |
| | Replace the SPU or SCU. Replace the PSU, or the upper unit interlock switch, or the right cover interlock switch. |
| | Continued on the next page. |

| Symptom | Action |
|--|--|
| Copy non-feed - upper cassette (con- tinued) | Does the SPU output the drive (CN5-7) and power signals to the DRU? Y N Replace the SPU or SCU. Does the DRU output the drive and power signals to the motor driver? Y N Replace the DRU. Replace the main motor and driver. |
| | Oneck the paper feed clutch. If it does not operate, do the following. Does the SPU output the drive signal to the DRU at CN5-13? Y N Replace the SPU or SCU. Does the solenoid receive the drive signal? Y N Replace the DRU. Replace the solenoid. Check that there is paper at the paper feed position. If there is not, check the lift mechanism (see page 3-30). Then check the circuit as follows. Does the SPU output the tray lift drive signal at CN5-15? Y N Replace the SPU or SCU. Does the tray lift solenoid receive the drive signal? Y N Replace the SPU or SCU. Does the tray lift solenoid receive the drive signal? Y N Replace the DRU Replace the DRU Replace the DRU Replace the DRU |
| | Continued on the next page |

| Symptom | Action |
|--|--|
| Copy non-feed - upper cassette (con- tinued) | Does the SPU receive signals from the paper height sensor at CN14-2? Y N Does the SPU output 5V at CN14-5? Y N Replace the SPU or SCU. Replace the sensor. |
| | Does the SPU receive signals from the paper size sensor on CN6? Y N Replace the sensor. Replace the SPU or SCU. |
| | If the main motor, pentagonal mirror motor, and development bias turn on, but not the master belt motor or lower paper feed motor, then the basic starting con- ditions for copying may not have been met. |
| | • The fusing lamp may not have reached the correct temperature (error code 922). |
| | • The pentagonal mirror motor (error code 923) or main or lower paper feed motor (error code 924) may not have reached the correct speed. |

• One page may not be stored in the page memory - check the component PCBs of the video data path and the connections between them.

| Symptom | Action |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Copy non-feed - lower cassette | Check that non-feed is not due to another problem (such as "Call Service" being lit, power cord not plugged in). |
| | Clean or replace the lower paper feed and pick-up rollers. |
| | Check the feed mechanism. |
| | Clean and lubricate the spring clutches. |
| | Clean the separation roller clutch. |
| | Remove debris from the feed-in area. |
| | Does the lower paper feed motor turn on? (Motor operation can be checked with s vice function 09, mode 6.) Y N Does the LIB receive + 24VD from the SPU? Y N |
| | Continued on the next page |

| Symptom | Action |
|--|--|
| Copy non-feed - lower cassette (con- tinued) | Does 1POWON go high after Copy has been pressed? Y N Replace the SPU or SCU. Does the SPU receive + 24VD from the PSU after Copy has been pressed? Y N Replace the PSU, upper unit interlock switch, o right cover interlock switch. Does the SPU output + 24V to the LIB after Copy has been pressed? Y N Replace the SPU or SCU. Check the connectors and harnesses. Does the LIB output the lower paper feed motor drive signal? Y N Replace the LIB, SPU, or SCU. Replace the motor and driver. Does the motor return a low at CN2-4 within 3 s of the motor turning on? Y N Replace the motor and driver (lock failed). Check the lower paper feed solenoid. If it does not work, check the following. Does the LIB send power (CN2-5) and drive (CN2-6) signals to the solenoid? Y N Replace the LIB, SPU, or SCU. Replace the lower paper feed solenoid. If it does not work, check the following. Does the LIB send power (CN2-5) and drive (CN2-6) signals to the solenoid? Y N Replace the LIB, SPU, or SCU. Replace the solenoid. |

| Symptom | Action |
|--|---|
| Copy non-feed - lower cassette (con- tinued) | Check that paper is at the paper feed position. If not, check the lift mechanism. then check the circuit as follows. Does the lift motor work? (This motor cannot be checked with service function 09, mode 6.) Y N Does the LIB send the power (CN3-10) and drive (CN3-11) signal to the motor? Y N Replace the LIB, SPU, or SCU. Replace the motor and driver. Does the LIB receive a signal from the lower paper height sensor at CN3-9? Y N Does the SPU send + 5V to the LIB? Y N Replace the SPU. Does the LIB send + 5V to the sensor at CN3-72 |
| | Y N Replace the LIB. Replace the sensor. Does the LIB receive signals from the lower paper size sensor on CN4-7, 8, and 9 when the cassette is installed? Y N Does the lower cassette switch cause the lower paper size sensor to activate when the switch is closed? Y N Replace the lower paper size sensor. Replace the lower paper size sensor. Replace the lower paper size sensor. Replace the LIB. SPLL or SCL. |

-

| Symptom | Action |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Copy double feed | Clean and lubricate, or replace the separation roller (upper or lower). |
| Abnormal noise from the printer | Dirty paper feed, pick-up, or separation clutch. |
| Dog-eared copies | Defective hot roller stripper. Excessive copy paper curl. |
| Ozone odour | Are the fans working? Y N Replace either: • Printer fan drive belt and/or main motor • Defective fan - charge corona fan - front transfer corona fan - rear transfer corona fan • DRU, SPU, SCU, or PSU. Change the ozone filter. |
| Toner overflow | This should be solved by installing a new toner collection tank or master unit. If it is not: Check that the toner overflow detection mechanism is not defective. Does the UIB send power to the toner overflow sensor and receive signals from it? Y N Replace the sensor. Replace the UIB, SPU, or SCU. |

5-4. Service Call Conditions

If the Call Service indicator is lit, one of the following conditions has occurred. In the following list, the messages printed on the Auto Service Call printout are given followed by an explanation in brackets if necessary.

- · Master Unit Replacement Required
- · Preventive Maintenance Required
- · Polygon Motor Fail (pentagonal mirror motor lock failure, or laser main scan synchronization failure)
- · Heater Control Fail (fusing lamp failure)
- · LD Power Lock Fail (laser diode power control failure)
- · Home Position Fail (master belt home position detection failure)
- · Main Motor Lock Fail (main motor or lower paper feed motor lock failure)
- · Charger Current Leak (transfer corona charge leak)
- · UIB Handshake fail
- . LIB Handshake fail
- . LDS Handshake Fail
- . Disk Drive Error (hard disk error)
- . Disk Controller Error (hard disk error)
- · Disk Memory Logical Error (hard disk error)

To find out which problem has occurred, either:

- See the Auto Service Call report that was sent to the service station for the problem with the machine.
- Check the error code history using service function 06 (see page 2-31).
- Check the printer status using service function 14, and scroll through the error messages on the screen (see page 2-38).
- Try to clear the service call condition using one of the following methods:
- 1. Use service function 09, mode 1 (SPU reset) to reset the machine.
- 2. Hold the Stop key down for about 10 s.
- 3. Switch the power off, wait 10 seconds, then switch back on.

If the problem remains, work through the appropriate troubleshooting procedure from the following pages.

- Resetting the Machine -

After each troubleshooting attempt, reset the machine with service function 09, mode 1 as explained above. If the machine still does not work, continue troubleshooting.

| Symptom | Action |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Master Unit Replace- ment Required | If the problem remains after installing a new master and resetting the master belt rotation counter with Function 99, reset the RAM addresses containing the counter (3036F6 to 3036F8, and 240030 to 240032) or replace the MBU, SPU, or SCU. |
| Preventive Main- tenance Required | A service technician should visit the machine and do the PM procedures. |

| Polygon Motor Fail | Does the SPU receive + 24VD from the PSU? Y N Does 1POWON go high after Copy is pressed? Y N Replace the SPU or SCU. Replace the PSU, upper unit interlock switch, or right cover interlock switch. Does the SPU output + 24V at CN4-1, 2, and 3? Y N Replace the SPU. Does the UIB output + 24V at CN2-4? Y N Replace the UIB. • Replace the pentagonal mirror motor. (Motor operation can be check- ed with service function 09, mode 6). • Replace the LSD or LDDR. |
|---------------------|--|
| Heater Control Fail | Replace the OIB, SPO, of SCO. Is the fusing unit thermistor open or shorted? If so replace it. Otherwise clean it. Replace the fusing lamp if it is open circuit. Replace the SPU or UIB. Replace the PSU. Replace the upper unit interlock switch or right cover interlock switch. |

| LD Power Lock Fail | Does the SPU receive all power supply signals from the PSU? Y N Replace the PSU or the interlock switches. Does the master unit interlock switch component on the upper unit pass + 12V and -12V? Y N Replace the interlock switch. Replace the master unit, LDDR, UIB, SPU, or SCU. |
|--------------------|--|
| Home Position Fail | (Home position detection can be checked with service function 09, mode 6). |
| | Clean the sensor patch on the master belt. Replace the master unit if it cannot be cleaned. Check the master belt drive mechanism. (Motor operation can be checked with service function 09, mode 6). Check the belt tension (p.3-30). Does the master belt drive motor operate? Y N Does the SPU receive + 24VD from the PSU? Y N Does the SPU receive + 24VD from the PSU? Y N Does 1POWON go high after Copy is pressed? Y N Replace the SPU or SCU. Replace the PSU, upper unit interlock switch, or right cover interlock switch. Check that + 24VD is passed from the PSU through to the DSB. Replace any PCB that does not pass on the voltage. |

Continued on the next page

```
Does the DSB output the motor drive phases?
                         γ
                                     Ν
                                     Replace the DSB, UIB, SPU, or SCU.
                         Replace the motor.
                         Does the UIB receive a signal from the master belt home position sensor?
                         γ
                                     Ν
                                     Does the sensor receive + 5V?
                                     γ
                                                  Ν
                                                  Trace the + 5V supply line through the machine
                                                  from the PSU to the sensor and replace the defective PCB.
                                     Replace the sensor.
                         Replace the UIB, SCU, or SPU.
Main Motor Lock Fail
                         Main Motor (Motor operation can be checked with service function 09,
                         mode 6).
                         Does the SPU receive + 24VD from the PSU?
                         γ
                                     Ν
                                     Does 1POWON go high after Copy is pressed?
                                     Υ
                                                  Ν
                                                  Replace the SPU or SCU.
                                     Replace the PSU, upper unit interlock switch, or right cover
                                     interlock switch.
                         Does the SPU output + 24V at CN5-1, 2, and 3?
                         γ
                                     Ν
                                     Replace the SPU.
                         Does the DRU output + 24V at CN2-3?
                         γ
                                     Replace the DRU.
                         Replace the main motor or the SPU or SCU.
```

| | Lower Paper Feed Motor (Motor operation can be checked with service function 09, mode 6). Does the SPU receive + 24VD from the PSU? Y N Does 1POWON go high after Copy is pressed? Y N Replace the SPU or SCU. Replace the PSU, upper unit interlock switch, or right cover interlock switch. Does the SPU output + 24V at CN3-1 and 2? Y N Replace the SPU. Does the LIB output + 24V at CN2-1? Y N Replace the LIB. Replace the motor or the SPU or SCU. | |
|-------------------------|---|--|
| Charger Current Leak | Clean the transfer corona wire and unit. Check that the development bias is correct (-225 +/- 10 V). If it is not, replace the power pack. Check that the SPU outputs the power and trigger signals to the power pack for transfer corona and bias. If not, replace the SPU. Replace the SPU, SCU, power pack or transfer corona unit if the problem still occurs. | |
| UIB Handshake Fail | Change the SPU, UIB, or SCU. | |
| LIB Handshake Fail | Change the SPU, LIB, or SCU. | |
| LDS Handshake Fail | Change the SCU, SPU, LDS, or UIB. | |

| Disk Drive Error | Replace the hard disk, SPU, or SCU. |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Disk Controller Error | Replace the SPU, hard disk, or SCU. |
| Disk Memory Logical Error | Replace the hard disk, SPU, or SCU. |

If an error code occurs, retry the communication. If the same problem occurs, try to fix the problem as suggested below.

Three digit error codes can appear with a dash after the first digit; if a report shows code 9-13, see code 913 in this manual.

Error codes 1xxx and three-digit codes will appear on the error report. Other codes will only appear in service mode operations.

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|------------------------|--|--|
| 1 to 44 Software error | | 1. Do a RAM test (service function 09, mode 3) to find out if there is a defective memory chip. Replace the defective board 2. Replace the MBU or SCU. |
| 45 | System RAM was cleared and reset by holding down the Stop key for 10 s | There is no problem. |
| 46 | Temporary power dropout | There is no problem. |
| 47 | A RAM test was executed (service function 09) | There is no problem. However, if the MBU RAM was tested, the hard disk bad sector data must be reprogrammed. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|------|---|---|
| 008 | The other end sent RTN or PIN after receiving a page, because there were too many errors (G3 mode) | Check the line connection. Check the connectors from the SCU through the machine to the G3NCU and modem. Replace the SCU, SPU, G3CCU, G3NCU, or modem. The other end may have jammed, or run out of paper or memory space. Try adjusting the tx level (use G3CCU bit switch 19 bits 0 to 3 or a dedicated tx parameter for that address). The other end may have a defective modem, CCU, NCU, SCU, or SPU. Check for line problems and noise. |
| 015 | The other end does not have the confidential or transfer function (G3 mode) | Incompatible remote terminal. Remote terminal memory full. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|------|--|---|
| 023 | Too many errors during reception (G3 mode); RTN was sent back to the other end | Check the line connection. Check the connectors from the SCU through the machine to the G3NCU and modem. Replace the SCU, SPU, G3CCU, G3NCU, or modem. Defective remote terminal. Check for line problems. Ask the other end to adjust their tx level. |
| 100 | Document jam during non-memory transmission | Improperly inserted document. See section 5-3. |
| 134 | Paper ran out immediately after the end of printing | Replace paper. Clear debris from the paper end sensors. Check the connections through the machine from the paper end sensors to the SCU (see the point-to-point diagram); replace any defective component in this circuit. |
| 410 | Communication failed because of Polling ID mismatch (Closed Net- work) | Get the Polling ID codes the same. Resend. |
| 521 | Memory overflow | Temporary memory shortage. Replace the SCU, SPU, or MBU. Test the hard disk using the routines in section 5-6, starting on page 5-64; if the hard disk is defective, reformat or replace it. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|------|---|---|
| 880 | CCU requested data transfer halt | Retry the communication. Replace the G3CCU, SCU, or SPU. |
| 881 | Timer for DMA transfer to the CCU ran out | Same as for 880. |
| 900 | Either: a) An Auto Service Call con- dition occurred during rx, b) PIN was sent back because substitute reception was impossible | Retry the communication. If the Call Service indicator is lit, solve the problem as explained in section 5-4, then reset the machine as explained on page 5-42. |
| 901 | Toner collection tank full | Replace the master unit. Clean the toner overflow sensor. Check the connections through the machine from the SCU to the toner overflow sensor. Replace any defective part of the circuit. |
| 906 | Master belt rotation counter ran out | See section 5-4 (Master Unit Replacement Required). |
| 907 | Copy jam at the cassette entrance | See section 5-3. |
| 908 | Copy jam under the master unit | See section 5-3. |
| 909 | Copy jam in the copy feed-out area | See section 5-3. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|------|-----------------------------------|--|
| 910 | Toner cartridge empty | Add toner. Check the toner end mechanism. Check the connections through the machine from the SCU to the toner end sensor. Replace any defective part of the circuit. |
| 912 | Cover open | Check all covers. Check that all cover switches are working properly (scanner cover switch, right cover switch, upper unit interlock switch, lower front cover switch, jam removal switch). Check the connections through the machine from the SCU to the cover switches. Replace any defective part of the circuit. |
| 913 | Master unit interlock switch open | Check that the upper unit is closed properly. Check the + 12V supply circuit for the LDDR; replace the interlock switch or any defective PCBs. |
| 917 | Transfer corona power leak | See section 5-4 (Charger Current Leak). |
| 918 | HMC - LDS handshake error | See section 5-4 (LDS Handshake Fail). |
| 919 | Toner collection tank nearly full | No error, see code 901. |
| 920 | Laser diode power control failed | See section 5-4 (LD Power Lock Fail). |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|------|--|--|
| 921 | Master belt home position detection failure | See section 5-4 (Home Position Fail). |
| 922 | Fusing lamp failure | See section 5-4 (Heater Control Fail). |
| 923 | Pentagonal mirror motor lock failure, or laser main scan synchronization failure | See section 5-4 (Polygon Motor Fail). |
| 924 | Main motor or lower paper feed motor lock failed | See section 5-4 (Main Motor Lock Fail). |
| 925 | UIB handshake error | See section 5-4 (UIB Handshake Fail). |
| 926 | LIB handshake error | See section 5-4 (LIB Handshake Fail). |
| 930 | Hard disk drive error | See section 5-4 (Disk Drive Error). |
| 931 | Hard disk control error | See section 5-4 (Disk Controller Error). |
| 932 | Hard disk memory error | See section 5-4 (Disk Memory Logical Error). |
| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|--------------------|---|--|
| 1000 to 1019 | SCU - G3CCU handshake error | Check the connection through the machine from the SCU to the G3CCU. Replace any defective part of the circuit. Replace the MBU. |
| 1030 | No reply from the other end (auto- matic dialling) | Check that the machine is connected to the line. Retry the communication. Replace the G3NCU, G3CCU, modem, SPU, or SCU. |
| 1031 | Call collision (automatic dialling) | 1. Retry the communication. 2. Replace the G3NCU, G3CCU, SPU, or SCU. |
| 1032 | The other end is busy (automatic dialling) | Retry the communication. Listen to the line; if the line is not busy but this error occurs, replace the G3NCU, G3CCU, modem, SCU, or SPU. |
| 1033 | CED (2100 Hz) be detected (auto- matic dialling) | Retry the communication. Monitor the line; if CED comes in but this error occurs, replace the G3NCU, G3CCU, SCU, modem, or SPU. |
| 1034 | Line cut-off detected (automatic dialling) | Retry the communication. Monitor the line; if the line is not cut but this error still occurs, replace the G3CCU, G3NCU, SPU, or SCU. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|------|--|--|
| 1036 | Polarity reversal not detected at the expected time (automatic dialling) | Retry the communication. Monitor the line; if polarity reversal occurs as expected but the error still occurs, replace the G3CCU, G3NCU, SPU, or SCU. |
| 1037 | Dialling not completed within 2 minutes (automatic dialling) | Retry the communication, using the same or different numbers. Replace the G3CCU, G3NCU, SPU, or SCU. |
| 1038 | Dialling not complete within 30 s (manual dialling) | 1. Retry the communication, completing dialling within 30 s. If the error still occurs, replace the G3CCU, G3NCU, SCU, or SPU. |
| 1051 | G2 is disabled at this end, but the other end is a G2 machine | Enable G2 (G3CCU bit switch 01, bit 1 must be 0), then retry the communication. |
| 1100 | The machine cannot send a response because the modem car- rier from the other end did not turn off (tx mode). | Noisy line; retry the communication. Set bit 2 of G3 CCU bit switch 07 to 1. Monitor the line; if the carrier did drop but the error still oc- curred, replace the G3CCU, G3NCU, SCU, modem, or SPU. |
| 1101 | Modem training hardware error (tx mode) | 1. Retry the communication. 2. Replace the modem, G3CCU, G3NCU, SPU, or SCU. |
| 1103 | PIS (462 Hz) received (tx mode) | 1. Retry the communication. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|------|---|---|
| 1104 | PIN received from the other end (tx mode) | Noisy line; retry the communication. Defective remote terminal. Replace the modem, G3CCU, G3NCU, SPU, or SCU. |
| 1105 | Third try failed (normal response to a signal cannot be detected after three tries) | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1106 | Modem training at 2400 bps failed (tx mode) | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1110 | Video data buffer became empty (tx m o d e) | Retry the communication. Replace the SCU, SPU, or VPU. |
| 1112 | DCN received from the other end at an unexpected time (tx mode) | Same as for code 1104. If possible, check the protocol timing by which DCN was received. |
| 1113 | DIS/NSF/GI cannot be received | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1117 | FTT received during confidential or transfer transmission. | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1122 | PIS (462 Hz) received from the other end (G2 tx mode) | Same as for code 1104. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|------|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1123 | CFR signal not detected within 5 s after phase synchronization finished, or CFR lasted longer than 6 s (G2 tx mode) | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1124 | MCF signal not detected within 5 s of transmission of EOM, or MCF lasted longer than 6 s (G2 tx mode) | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1160 | At the start of the video data, no data was received from the SCU within 35 s (ECM tx mode). | 1. Replace the SCU, SPU, or G3CCU |
| 1161 | During video data transmission, no data was received from the SCU for 35 s (ECM tx mode). | Same as for code 1160. |
| 1162 | Transmission failed at 2400 bps (ECM tx mode) | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1163 | T5 timer ran out (ECM tx mode) | 1. Defective remote terminal |
| 1164 | Unexpected protocol frame received (ECM tx mode) | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1165 | EOR sent out (ECM tx mode) | 1. Retry the communication. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|------|--|--|
| 1166 | PPR received with all bits in the FIF at 0 (ECM tx mode) | Retry the communication. Defective remote terminal. |
| 1201 | Modem carrier cut and machine hanged up (rx mode) | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1204 | Modem training failed (rx mode) | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1205 | No HDLC frame was received (rx mode) | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1206 | Modem carrier not switched off (rx mode) | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1210 | Video data buffer full (rx mode) | 1. Retry the communication. |
| 1211 | DCS/GC cannot be received (rx mode) | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1212 | Modem training hardware failure (rx mode) | 1. Retry the communication. 2. Replace the G3CCU, G3NCU, modem, SPU, or SCU. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|------|--|--|
| 1215 | RTC could not be detected (rx mode) | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1216 | EOL cannot be detected within 5 s | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1222 | PIS received from the other end (G2 rx mode) | Defective remote terminal. Other end made a voice request. Replace the G3CCU, G3NCU, modem, SCU, or SPU. |
| 1223 | Synchronization (phasing) failure (G2 rx mode) | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1224 | 2100 Hz video data carrier cannot be received (G2 rx mode) | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1225 | EOM could not be detected at the end of the data, or EOM lasted longer than 4 s (G2 rx mode) | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1260 | T2 timer ran out (ECM rx mode) | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1261 | The tx side sent more than 35 s of flags before a frame. | Retry the communication. Defective remote terminal. |
| 1262 | No frame or V.21 signal received for more than 3 s, so the rx side sent DCN. | Retry the communication. Defective remote terminal. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|-----------------|--|---|
| 1263 | Unexpected frame received after sending out RNR in response to PPS-Q or RR (ECM rx mode) | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1264 | T2 timer ran out after receiving EOR (ECM rx mode) | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1265 | Unexpected frame received after sending out RNR in response to EOR-Q or RR (ECM rx mode) | Same as for code 1104. |
| 1266 | EOR received (ECM rx mode) | Retry the communication. |
| 9201 to 9274 | Data compression/reconstruction hardware error | 1. Replace the SCU, SPU, or VPU. |
| 9331 | Document jam, or scanner cover open | If document jams are persistent, see section 5-3 (document jam troubleshooting). Check the connections through the machine from the SCU to the scan line sensor and the scanner cover switch; replace any defective parts of this circuit. |
| 9332 | SPU-SCU handshake error | 1. Replace the SPU or SCU. |
| 9333 | Scanning stopped at the other end (for example, the user pressed stop) | Retry the communication. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|------|---|---|
| 9401 | Paper fed-out indication not received within 30 s of the printing start command | Change the SPU, copy feed-out sensor, DRU, or SCU. |
| 9403 | No printer paper | Add paper. If this error occurs when paper is present, check the connections through the machine from the SCU to the defective cassette's sensors and drive components. Replace any defective components. |
| 9405 | Page memory full, and memory did not become available within 30 s | Retry the communication. Replace the SCU or SPU. |
| 9406 | Machine cannot print | Check that there is enough toner and paper. Check for paper jams. Check that all covers are closed properly. If all in step 1 is ok but the error still occurs, check the circuits through the machine from the SCU to the sensors and cover switches. |
| 9532 | See code 1105. | |
| 9551 | RTN received but retransmission was not possible; the line was cut. | See code 008. |
| 9553 | See code 1104. | |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|------|---|--|
| 9556 | EOR was sent out and the line was cut (ECM tx mode) | See code 1165. |
| 9557 | EOR was sent out and the transmis- sion resumed from the next page | Retry the communication if the page was illegible at the other end |
| 9592 | No response from the CCU | Check the connections through the machine from the SCU to the CCU. Replace any defective components. |
| 9599 | CCU reset due to handshake error | If this error is persistent, change the SCU, CCU, or SPU. |
| 9608 | Hard disk controller error | Replace the SPU, hard disk, or SCU. |
| 9609 | Disk drive error | See code 9608. |
| 9610 | Hard disk DMA transfer error | See code 9608. |
| 9625 | The disk drive accessed a non-exis- tent or forbidden disk area. | See code 9608. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|-----------------|---|------------------------|
| 9626 to 9628 | Insufficient RAM area for hard disk administration | See code 9608. |
| 9629, 9630 | Hard disk data file destroyed | See code 9608. |
| 9631 | Hard disk control sequence error | See code 9608. |
| 9632 to 9634 | Abnormality in the hard disk ad- ministration RAM area | See code 9608. |

1. Outline

These functions display hard disk error codes and provide a few routines to help you restore the hard disk to normal operation. The various hard disk error codes will help to decide which action to take.

Some hard disk error conditions lead to Auto Service Calls. Check whether any Auto Service Calls were received from this machine, and find out what the error message was. Then consult section 5-4.

If a hard disk error code is displayed on the error report or Service Monitor Report (service function 06), see section 5-5 (Error Codes) for guidance.

If an error code is displayed on the LCD immediately after power-up, see the Power-up Error Code table on page 5-70 for guidance.

If there are no hard disk errors on the error report or the LCD at power-up, enter the hard disk troubleshooting mode as shown below and see the displayed error code. Check the Power-up Error Code table on page 5-70 for guidance. If there are still no error codes displayed, do hard disk routine 2 (Error Code Display), and see the Hard Disk Error Code table on page 5-71.

If it is difficult to decide what to do, a basic rule of thumb to follow would be to try the procedures in the following order:

- File Correction Function 3
- Clear Address Function 6
- Clear Job Function 7
- Disk Format Function 8 (there is no need to enter the bad sector data)
- Replace the hard disk, SPU, or SCU.

ENTERING HARD DISK TROUBLESHOOTING MODE

From standby mode, hold down the Stop key for about 10 seconds until the machine does a warm start.
 Immediately, press Function, then *, then #. An error message is displayed. Disregard this message unless an error code is also displayed.

3. Press Function, then *, then # once more.

The hard disk troubleshooting menu is now displayed.

If a warm start is impossible, switch the machine off, wait for 10 s, then switch back on. Then go to step 2.

EXITING HARD DISK TROUBLESHOOTING MODE Do Function 1 (System Start) to return the machine to standby.

3. Functions

- 3-1. System Start Function 1
 - 1. Enter the hard disk troubleshooting mode. See above.
 - 2. When the hard disk troubleshooting menu is displayed, enter 1 at the ten-key pad, then press Yes.
 - 3. The machine resets itself automatically.

3-2. Error Code Display - Function 2

See the Hard Disk Error Code table on page 5-71 for an explanation of the error codes.

- 1. Enter the hard disk troubleshooting mode. See page 5-65.
- 2. When the hard disk troubleshooting menu is displayed, enter 2 at the ten-key pad.
- 3. A table of error codes is displayed. Press the up and down arrows of the scroll key to scroll through the table.

The display contains four columns.

ID: This contains a sequence number from 0001 to 00FF.

MODE: This explains what mode the machine was in when the error occurred

- 0001 Hard disk set-up
- 0002 Normal system start-up: reading from hard disk
- 0003 Formatting the hard disk
- 0005 Normal system start-up: writing to hard disk
- FF00 Address label data error
- FF10 Job file (memory file) error
- FILE NO: This gives the number of the defective file, as it is shown on the Journal.

SAF ID: This is not for use in the field.

ERROR: This is the error code.

A normally operating machine will show:

ID MODE FILE NO. SAF ID ERROR

0001 0001 FFFF FFFF 0000

4. When you have finished, press Yes to return to the hard disk troubleshooting menu.

3-3. File Correction - Function 3

This function allows the hard disk to attempt to recover defective files. If this routine is successful, all defective files will be recovered intact; no data will be lost. If this routine fails, it will be necessary to try routines 6 (Clear Address) and/or 7 (Clear Job) depending on the recovery method for the observed error code.

- 1. Enter the hard disk troubleshooting mode. See page 5-65.
- 2. When the hard disk troubleshooting menu is displayed, enter 3 at the ten-key pad, then press Yes.
- 3. The machine asks "Recover SAF File Y/N?". Press Yes. The machine resets itself automatically.

3-4. Random Read Test - Function 4

Factory use only.

3-5. All Read Test - Function 5

Factory use only.

3-6. Clear Address - Function 6

This function clears the address labels associated with the Quick Dials and Speed Dials used in the files on the hard disk. These "address labels" are programmed with the option setting mode of Quick/Speed Dial programming, and they have a similar function to a cover letter; they can be up to 8 lines long.

If this routine is successful, all defective files will be recovered intact; no data will be lost, except the labels. If this routine fails, it may be necessary to try routine 7 (Clear Job), depending on the recovery method for the observed error code.

- 1. Enter the hard disk troubleshooting mode. See page 5-65.
- 2. When the hard disk troubleshooting menu is displayed, enter 6 at the ten-key pad, then press Yes.
- 3. When "Clear All Name Insertions? Y/N" is displayed, press Yes. The machine automatically resets itself.

3-7. Clear Job - Function 7

This is a last-resort routine to recover the hard disk. All files will be lost if this is successful, but the hard disk will be operational. Note that programmed data such as Speed and Quick Dials will not be cleared. If this routine fails, try reformatting the hard disk (Function 8 below).

- 1. Enter the hard disk troubleshooting mode. See page 5-65.
- 2. When the hard disk troubleshooting menu is displayed, enter 7 at the ten-key pad, then press Yes.
- 3. When "Clear All Files? Y/N" is displayed, press Yes. The machine automatically resets itself.

3-8. Disk Format - Function 8

This function has already been explained in section 1-6 (Installation). If there are severe hard disk problems in the field, try reformatting the disk. Note that all files will be lost. If the hard disk is still defective, replace it.

- 1. Enter the hard disk troubleshooting mode. See page 5-65.
- 2. When the hard disk troubleshooting menu is displayed, enter 8 at the ten-key pad, then press Yes, enter 1988, and press Yes.
- 3. When "Initialize System? Y/N" is displayed, press Yes.
- 4. Enter the bad spot information listed on the decal inside the machine. Press Yes when you have finished.

Notes:

The hard disk bad sectors need only be reprogrammed under the following circumstances:

- · After hard disk or MBU replacement
- After making an MBU RAM test (service function 09, mode 3)
- After initializing the MBU RAM by removing the battery switch.
- After MBU battery failure or accidentally turning the battery switch off.
- 5. "Initialize System Y/N" is displayed again. Press Yes to format the hard disk. After formatting has finished, the machine will ask you to program the initial settings. This is because the hard disk contains user-programmed items such as Quick Dial Keys.

4. Error Codes

4-1. Power-up Error Codes

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Action |
|------|--|--|
| 10 | During system reset (power up, or pressing Stop for 10 s), no response came from the hard disk controller (on the SPU), or the response was in error | Check the SCU/SPU and SPU/hard disk connections. Replace the SPU. Replace the hard disk. |
| 12 | Abnormal completion of disk format- ting | Try to format the disk again. If the same error occurs, do the same steps as for error code 10. |
| 13 | Disk I/O error during system reset | See error code 10. |
| 14 | Address label data error during sys- tem reset | Try Function 3 (File Correction). If the same error occurs after that, try Function 6 (Clear Address). If that fails, see error code 12. |
| 15 | Job file data error during system reset | Try Function 3 (File Correction). If the same error occurs after that, try Function 7 (Clear Job). If that fails, see error code 12. |
| 16 | See error code 13. | See error code 13. |
| 20 | Disk formatting error | See error code 10 |

4-2. Hard Disk Error Codes

| Code | Suggested Action |
|----------------|--|
| 01 | Try "File Correction" (hard disk function 3). If that fails, try Clear Address (function 6). If that fails, try Clear Job (function 7). If that fails, reformat the disk (function 8). If that fails, replace the hard disk. |
| 02 to 10 | See code 01. |
| 21 to 32 | See code 01. |
| 40 to 42 | See code 01. |

SECTION 6

OPTIONAL BAR CODE READER

SECTION 6. OPTIONAL BAR CODE READER

6-1. Accessory Check List 6-1 6-2. Installation Procedure 6-2

6-1. Accessory Check List

- 1. Bar Code Reader Installation Instructions
- 2. Bar Code Reader Holder
- 3. Bar Code Reader
- 4. Department Card Set (1 set = 10 cards)
- 5. Operation Manual

6-2. Installation Procedure

- 1. Turn off the main switch.
- 2. Open the upper unit by pushing button [A].
- 3. Remove cover [B] (3 screws).
- 4. Install the bar code reader holder [C] (3 screws).
- 5. Install the bar code reader [D].
- 6. Turn on the main switch.



SECTION 7

ELECTRICAL DATA

SECTION 7. ELECTRICAL DATA

| 7-1. | Point-to-point Diagram | . 7-1 |
|------|------------------------|--------|
| 7-2. | Signal Tables | . 7-4 |
| 1. | SCU | . 7-4 |
| 2. | SPU | 7-11 |
| 3. | VPU | . 7-20 |
| 4. | SBU | . 7-20 |
| 5. | DRU | 7-20 |
| 6. | UIB | 7-22 |
| 7. | DSB | . 7-24 |
| 8. | LIB | 7-25 |
| 9. | OPU | 7-26 |
| 10 | . PSU | . 7-26 |
| 11 | . G3 CCU | . 7-28 |
| 12 | . G3 NCU | . 7-30 |
| 13 | . BSRU | 7-31 |

| 7-3. Block Diagrams | | | | 7-32 |
|----------------------------------|--|--|--|------|
| 1. Overall Machine Control | | | | 7-32 |
| 2. Video Data Path | | | | 7-37 |
| 3. Power Distribution | | | | 7-40 |
| 4. Scanner | | | | 7-43 |
| 5. Communication Control | | | | 7-46 |
| 6. Printer | | | | 7-47 |
| 7-4. Electrical Component Layout | | | | 7-51 |
| 7-5. Timing Charts | | | | 7-55 |
| 1. Scanner | | | | 7-55 |
| 2. Printer | | | | 7-56 |







7-3

7-2. Signal Tables

1. SCU

CN1 - SPU

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----|-------|-------------------|
| A1 | + 5V | Supply from SPU |
| B1 | + 5V | Supply from SPU |
| A2 | + 5V | Supply from SPU |
| B2 | + 5V | Supply from SPU |
| A3 | + 5V | Supply from SPU |
| B3 | + 5V | Supply from SPU |
| A4 | + 5V | Supply from SPU |
| B4 | + 5V | Supply from SPU |
| A5 | 5UDS | Upper data strobe |
| B5 | 1AB1 | Address bus |
| A6 | 1AB2 | Address bus |
| B6 | 1AB3 | Address bus |
| A7 | 1AB4 | Address bus |
| B7 | COM1 | Ground |
| A8 | 1AB5 | Address bus |
| B8 | 1AB6 | Address bus |
| A9 | 1AB7 | Address bus |
| B9 | COM1 | Ground |
| A10 | 1AB8 | Address bus |
| B10 | 1AB9 | Address bus |
| A11 | 1AB10 | Address bus |

| B11 | 1AB11 Address bus |
|-----|------------------------|
| A12 | 1AB12 Address bus |
| B12 | COM1 Ground |
| A13 | 1AB13 Address bus |
| B13 | 1AB14 Address bus |
| A14 | 1AB15 Address bus |
| B14 | COM1 Ground |
| A15 | 1AB16 Address bus |
| B15 | 1AB17 Address bus |
| A16 | 1AB18 Address bus |
| B16 | 1AB19 Address bus |
| A17 | 1AB20 Address bus |
| B17 | COM1 Ground |
| A18 | 1AB21 Address bus |
| B18 | 1AB22 Address bus |
| A19 | 1AB23 Address bus |
| B19 | COM1 Ground |
| A20 | 5LDS Lower data strobe |
| B20 | COM1 Ground |
| A21 | 1D00 Data bus |
| B21 | 1D01 Data bus |
| A22 | 1D02 Data bus |
| B22 | 1D03 Data bus |
| A23 | 1D04 Data bus |
| B23 | COM1 Ground |

Continued on the next page

CN1 (Continued) - SPU

| Pin | Name | Function | | | |
|-----|---------|---------------------|---------|---------|-----------------|
| A24 | 1D05 | Data bus | A38 | 5CSMAEN | Not used |
| B24 | 1D06 | Data bus | B38 | COM1 | Ground |
| A25 | 1D07 | Data bus | A39 | 5CSIO | I/O chip select |
| B25 | COM1 | Ground | B39 | COM1 | Ground |
| A26 | 1D08 | Data bus | A40 | 5RESET | Reset signal |
| B26 | 1D09 | Data bus | B40 | COM1 | Ground |
| A27 | 1D10 | Data bus | A41 | COM1 | Ground |
| B27 | 1D11 | Data bus | B41 | COM1 | Ground |
| A28 | 1D12 | Data bus | A42 | COM1 | Ground |
| B28 | COM1 | Ground | B42 | COM1 | Ground |
| A29 | 1D13 | Data bus | A43 | COM1 | Ground |
| B29 | 1D14 | Data bus | B43 | COM1 | Ground |
| A30 | 1D15 | Data bus | A44 | COM1 | Ground |
| B30 | COM1 | Ground | B44 | COM1 | Ground |
| A31 | 5MERD | Memory read enable | A45 | + 12V | Not connected |
| B31 | COM1 | Ground | B45 | + 12V | Not connected |
| A32 | 5MEWR | Memory write enable | A46 | + 12V | Not connected |
| B32 | COM1 | Ground | B46 | + 12V | Not connected |
| A33 | 5IORD | I/O read enable | A47 | COM2 | Ground |
| B33 | COM1 | Ground | B47 | COM2 | Ground |
| A34 | 5IOWR | I/O write enable | A48 | COM2 | Ground |
| B34 | COM1 | Ground | B48 | COM2 | Ground |
| A35 | 5DRQ10 | Not used | A49 | - 12V | Supply from SPU |
| B35 | COM1 | Ground | B49 | - 12V | Supply from SPU |
| A36 | 5DACK10 | Not used | A50 | - 12V | Supply from SPU |
| B36 | COM1 | Ground | B50 | - 12V | Supply from SPU |
| A37 | 1INT10 | Not used | | | |
| | | | | | |

B37 COM1 Ground

CN2 - OPU

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----|--------|---------------|
| 1 | + 5V | supply to OPU |
| 2 | COM1 | Ground |
| 3 | + 5V | supply to OPU |
| 4 | COM1 | Ground |
| 5 | COM2 | LCD ground |
| 6 | - 12V | Supply to LCD |
| 7 | COM2 | LCD ground |
| 8 | - 12V | Supply to LCD |
| 9 | 1AB1 | Address bus |
| 10 | COM1 | Ground |
| 11 | 1AB2 | Address bus |
| 12 | COM1 | Ground |
| 13 | 1AB3 | Address bus |
| 14 | COM1 | Ground |
| 15 | 1AB4 . | Address bus |
| 16 | COM1 | Ground |
| 17 | 1D00 | Data bus |
| 18 | COM1 | Ground |
| 19 | 1D01 | Data bus |
| 20 | COM1 | Ground |
| 21 | 1D02 | Data bus |
| 22 | COM1 | Ground |
| 23 | 1D03 | Data bus |
| 24 | COM1 | Ground |
| 25 | 1D04 | Data bus |
| 26 | COM1 | Ground |
| 27 | 1D05 | Data bus |

| 28 | COM1 | Ground |
|----|---------|--------------------------|
| 29 | 1D06 | Data bus |
| 30 | COM1 | Ground |
| 31 | 1D07 | Data bus |
| 32 | COM1 | Ground |
| 33 | 5IOCS20 | Chip select |
| 34 | COM1 | Ground |
| 35 | 5IORD | OPU status read enable |
| 36 | COM1 | Ground |
| 37 | 5IOWR | OPU command write enable |
| 38 | COM1 | Ground |
| 39 | COM1 | Ground |
| 40 | COM1 | Ground |
| 41 | N. C. | Grounded at SCU |
| 42 | COM1 | Ground |
| 43 | N. C. | |
| 44 | COM1 | Ground |
| 45 | 5RESET | Reset signal |
| 46 | COM1 | Ground |
| 47 | + 5V | supply to OPU |
| 48 | COM1 | Ground |
| 49 | + 5V | supply to OPU |
| 50 | COM1 | Ground |

CN3 - SPU

| Pin | Name | Function | | | |
|-----|---------|---------------------------------|-----|-----------|----------------------------------|
| A1 | + 5V | Supply from SPU | | | |
| B1 | + 5V | Supply from SPU | A14 | 5HDCAEN | Hard disk controller address |
| A2 | + 5V | Supply from SPU | | | enable |
| B2 | + 5V | Supply from SPU | B14 | COM1 | Ground |
| A3 | + 5V | Supply from SPU | A15 | 5IOCS32 | Hard disk controller chip select |
| B3 | + 5V | Supply from SPU | B15 | COM1 | Ground |
| A4 | + 5V | Supply from SPU | A16 | 5WRMODE | Main cpu write mode |
| B4 | + 5V | Supply from SPU | B16 | COM1 | Ground |
| A5 | + 5V | Supply from SPU | A17 | 1ACOFF | Main power dropout |
| B5 | + 5V | Supply from SPU | B17 | COM1 | Ground |
| A6 | + 5V | Supply from SPU | A18 | 1TXRXCK | Bar code reader clock (9600 bps) |
| B6 | + 5V | Supply from SPU | B18 | COM1 | Ground |
| A7 | 5RQDCR1 | DMA request (ADCR1) | A19 | 5HMCRDY | HMC ready |
| B7 | COM1 | Ground | B19 | COM1 | Ground |
| A8 | 5DACK32 | DMA acknowledge (ADCR1) | A20 | 5SPURDY | SPU ready |
| B8 | COM1 | Ground | B20 | COM1 | Ground |
| A9 | 5DRQ13 | DMA request (Hard disk control) | A21 | 5BUSY | G3/G4 CCU handshake memory |
| B9 | COM1 | Ground | | | busy |
| A10 | 5DACK13 | DMA acknowledge (Hard disk | B21 | COM1 | Ground |
| | | control) | A22 | 5G3CS | G3 handshake memory chip |
| B10 | COM1 | Ground | | | select |
| A11 | 5HMCUDS | HMC upper byte data strobe | B22 | COM1 | Ground |
| B11 | COM1 | Ground | A23 | 5G4CS | G4 handshake memory chip |
| A12 | 5HMCLDS | HMC lower byte data strobe | | | select |
| B12 | COM1 | Ground | B23 | COM1 | Ground |
| A13 | 5HMCAS | HMC address strobe | | | |
| B13 | COM1 | Ground | | Continued | on the next page. |

CN3 (Continued) - SPU

| Pin | Name Function |
|-----|--|
| A24 | 1INT26 Interrupt request (ADCR1) |
| B24 | COM1 Ground |
| A25 | Not connected |
| B25 | 1INT14 Interrupt request from hard disk controller |
| A26 | 1INT32 Interrupt request from G3CCU handshake port (write mode) |
| B26 | 1INT33 Interrupt request from G3CCU handshake port (read mode) |
| A27 | 1INT34 Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode) |
| B27 | 1INT35 Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (read mode) |
| A28 | 1INT30 Interrupt request from SPU hand- shake port (write mode) |
| B28 | 1INT31 Interrupt request from SPU hand- shake port (read mode) |
| A29 | 1INT11 R interrupt request from bar code reader |
| B29 | 1INT12 T interrupt request from bar code reader |
| A30 | 1AD1 Address bus for ADCR on the |
| B30 | COM1 Ground |

| A31 | 1AD2 Address bus for ADCR on the VPU |
|-----|---|
| B31 | COM1 Ground |
| A32 | 1AD3 Address bus for ADCR on the VPU |
| B32 | COM1 Ground |
| A33 | 1AD4 Address bus for ADCR on the |
| | VPU |
| B33 | COM1 Ground |
| A34 | 5G3RST G3 reset signal |
| B34 | 5G4RST G4 reset signal |
| A35 | |
| to | COM1 Ground |
| B40 | |

CN4 - MBU

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----|---------|----------------|
| A1 | + 5V Su | pply from SPU |
| B1 | + 5V Si | pply from SPU |
| A2 | + 5V Si | pply from SPU |
| B2 | + 5V Sı | ipply from SPU |
| A3 | + 5V Sı | ipply from SPU |
| B3 | + 5V Si | ipply from SPU |
| A4 | + 5V Si | ipply from SPU |
| B4 | + 5V Si | ipply from SPU |
| A5 | 1AB1 Ad | ddress bus |
| B5 | 1AB2 Ad | ddress bus |
| A6 | 1AB3 A | ddress bus |
| B6 | COM1 G | round |
| A7 | 1AB4 Ad | ddress bus |
| B7 | 1AB5 Ad | ddress bus |
| A8 | 1AB6 Ad | ddress bus |
| B8 | COM1 G | round |
| A9 | 1AB7 A | ddress bus |
| B9 | 1AB8 A | ddress bus |
| A10 | 1AB9 A | ddress bus |
| B10 | COM1 G | round |
| A11 | 1AB10 A | ddress bus |
| B11 | 1AB11 A | ddress bus |
| A12 | 1AB12 A | ddress bus |
| B12 | COM1 G | round |
| A13 | 1AB13 A | ddress bus |
| B13 | 1AB14 A | ddress bus |
| A14 | 1AB15 A | ddress bus |
| B14 | COM1 G | round |

| B151 AB17 Address busA161 DB0 Data busB16COM1 GroundA171 DB1 Data busB171 DB2 Data busA181 DB3 Data busB18COM1 GroundA191 DB4 Data busB191 DB5 Data busB20COM1 GroundA211 DB7 Data busB22COM1 GroundA231 DB10 Data busB24COM1 GroundA251 DB10 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275 CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB26COM1 Ground | A15 | 1AB16 Address bus |
|---|-----|---------------------------|
| A161 DB0 Data busB16COM1 GroundA171 DB1 Data busB171 DB2 Data busA181 DB3 Data busB18COM1 GroundA191 DB4 Data busB191 DB5 Data busB20COM1 GroundA211 DB7 Data busB22COM1 GroundA231 DB10 Data busB24COM1 GroundA251 DB10 Data busB26COM1 GroundA271 DB12 Data busB28COM1 GroundA291 DB10 Data busB211 DB10 Data busB22COM1 GroundA231 DB10 Data busB24COM1 GroundA251 DB13 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | B15 | 1AB17 Address bus |
| B16COM1 GroundA171DB1 Data busB171DB2 Data busA181DB3 Data busB18COM1 GroundA191DB4 Data busB191DB5 Data busA201DB6 Data busB20COM1 GroundA211DB7 Data busB22COM1 GroundA221DB9 Data busB231DB10 Data busB231DB10 Data busB24COM1 GroundA251DB13 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | A16 | 1DB0 Data bus |
| A171 DB1 Data busB171 DB2 Data busA181 DB3 Data busB18COM1 GroundA191 DB4 Data busB191 DB5 Data busA201 DB6 Data busB20COM1 GroundA211 DB7 Data busB221 DB8 Data busB231 DB10 Data busB231 DB10 Data busB231 DB10 Data busB24COM1 GroundA251 DB13 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | B16 | COM1 Ground |
| B171 DB2 Data busA181 DB3 Data busB18COM1 GroundA191 DB4 Data busB191 DB5 Data busA201 DB6 Data busB20COM1 GroundA211 DB7 Data busB211 DB8 Data busB22COM1 GroundA231 DB10 Data busB231 DB10 Data busB231 DB11 Data busB24COM1 GroundA251 DB13 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | A17 | 1DB1 Data bus |
| A181DB3 Data busB18COM1 GroundA191DB4 Data busB191DB5 Data busA201DB6 Data busB20COM1 GroundA211DB7 Data busB211DB8 Data busB22COM1 GroundA231DB10 Data busB231DB10 Data busB24COM1 GroundA251DB13 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | B17 | 1DB2 Data bus |
| B18COM1 GroundA191DB4 Data busB191DB5 Data busA201DB6 Data busB20COM1 GroundA211DB7 Data busB211DB8 Data busB22COM1 GroundA221DB9 Data busB22COM1 GroundA231DB10 Data busB231DB11 Data busB24COM1 GroundA251DB13 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | A18 | 1DB3 Data bus |
| A191DB4 Data busB191DB5 Data busA201DB6 Data busB20COM1 GroundA211DB7 Data busB211DB8 Data busB22COM1 GroundA221DB9 Data busB22COM1 GroundA231DB10 Data busB231DB11 Data busB24COM1 GroundA251DB13 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | B18 | COM1 Ground |
| B191DB5 Data busA201DB6 Data busB20COM1 GroundA211DB7 Data busB211DB8 Data busB221DB9 Data busB22COM1 GroundA231DB10 Data busB231DB11 Data busB24COM1 GroundA251DB13 Data busB251DB14 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | A19 | 1DB4 Data bus |
| A201DB6 Data busB20COM1 GroundA211DB7 Data busB211DB8 Data busB221DB9 Data busB22COM1 GroundA231DB10 Data busB231DB11 Data busB24COM1 GroundA251DB13 Data busB251DB14 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | B19 | 1DB5 Data bus |
| B20COM1 GroundA211DB7 Data busB211DB8 Data busA221DB9 Data busB22COM1 GroundA231DB10 Data busB231DB11 Data busB24COM1 GroundA251DB13 Data busB251DB14 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | A20 | 1DB6 Data bus |
| A211DB7 Data busB211DB8 Data busA221DB9 Data busB22COM1 GroundA231DB10 Data busB231DB11 Data busB24COM1 GroundA251DB13 Data busB251DB14 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | B20 | COM1 Ground |
| B211DB8 Data busA221DB9 Data busB22COM1 GroundA231DB10 Data busB231DB11 Data busB24COM1 GroundA251DB13 Data busB251DB14 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | A21 | 1DB7 Data bus |
| A221DB9 Data busB22COM1 GroundA231DB10 Data busB231DB11 Data busB241DB12 Data busB24COM1 GroundA251DB13 Data busB251DB14 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | B21 | 1DB8 Data bus |
| B22COM1 GroundA231DB10 Data busB231DB11 Data busA241DB12 Data busB24COM1 GroundA251DB13 Data busB251DB14 Data busA261DB15 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | A22 | 1DB9 Data bus |
| A231 DB10 Data busB231 DB11 Data busA241 DB12 Data busB24COM1 GroundA251 DB13 Data busB251 DB14 Data busA261 DB15 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | B22 | COM1 Ground |
| B231 DB11 Data busA241 DB12 Data busB24COM1 GroundA251 DB13 Data busB251 DB14 Data busA261 DB15 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | A23 | 1DB10 Data bus |
| A241DB12 Data busB24COM1 GroundA251DB13 Data busB251DB14 Data busA261DB15 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | B23 | 1DB11 Data bus |
| B24COM1 GroundA251DB13 Data busB251DB14 Data busA261DB15 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | A24 | 1DB12 Data bus |
| A251 DB13 Data busB251 DB14 Data busA261 DB15 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | B24 | COM1 Ground |
| B251 DB14 Data busA261 DB15 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | A25 | 1DB13 Data bus |
| A261DB15 Data busB26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | B25 | 1DB14 Data bus |
| B26COM1 GroundA275CSMEM0 EPROM chip selectB275CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | A26 | 1DB15 Data bus |
| A27 5CSMEM0 EPROM chip select B27 5CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | B26 | COM1 Ground |
| B27 5CSMEM1 EPROM chip select | A27 | 5CSMEM0 EPROM chip select |
| | B27 | 5CSMEM1 EPROM chip select |

Continued on the next page.

CN4 (Continued) - MBU

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-------------------------------|---------|--|
| A28 5CSMEM2 EPROM chip select | | |
| B28 | COM1 | Ground |
| A29 | 5CSMEM3 | EPROM chip select |
| B29 | 5CSMEMC | SRAM (battery backed-up) chip select |
| A30 | 5CSMEMF | Not used |
| B30 | COM1 | Ground |
| A31 | 5LDRD | Data memory read (low byte) |
| B31 | 5LDWR | Data memory write (low byte) |
| A32 | 5UDRD | Data memory read (high byte) |
| B32 | COM1 | Ground |
| A33 | 5UDWR | Data memory write (high byte) |
| B33 | 5IOCS10 | Real time clock chip select |
| A34 | 5IRD | Main cpu or DMA controller I/O read |
| B34 | COM1 | Ground |
| A35 | 5CPU1WR | Main cpu I/O write |
| B35 | 5PONRST | Power on reset to all systems |
| A36 | COM1 | Ground |
| B36 | COM1 | Ground |
| A37 | COM1 | Ground |
| B37 | COM1 | Ground |
| A38 | COM1 | Ground |
| B38 | COM1 | Ground |
| A39 | COM1 | Ground |
| B39 | COM1 | Ground |
| A40 | COM1 | Ground |
| B40 | COM1 | Ground |

2. SPU

CN1 - SCU

See SCU CN1.

The following pins are not connected on the SPU: A35, A36, A37, A38.

CN2 - SPU Fan

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----|-----------|-------------------|
| 1 | + 24VD Po | ower supply |
| 2 | 5HDFAN Fa | an drive (L = On) |

CN3 - LIB

| Pin | Name | Function | V |
|-----|--------|-----------------------|---|
| 1 | + 24VD | Power supply | |
| 2 | + 24VD | Power supply | |
| 3 | COM3 | Ground | |
| 4 | COM3 | Ground | |
| 5 | 5LIBRS | LIB reset (L = Reset) | |
| 6 | COM1 | Ground | |
| 7 | 1LCSOD | LIB drive data | |
| 8 | 1LCSID | LIB status data | |
| 9 | + 5V | Power supply | |

CN4 - UIB

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----|--------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 | + 24VD | Power supply |
| 2 | + 24VD | Power supply |
| 3 | + 24VD | Power supply |
| 4 | COM3 | Ground |
| 5 | COM3 | Ground |
| 6 | COM3 | Ground |
| 7 | + 12V | Power supply |
| 8 | + 12V | Power supply |
| 9 | COM2 | Ground |
| 10 | COM2 | Ground |
| 11 | - 12V | Power supply |
| 12 | - 12V | Power supply |
| 13 | COM1 | Ground |
| 14 | 5HETEN | Fusing lamp enable (L = On) |
| 15 | COM1 | Ground |
| 16 | XTHERM | Fusing thermistor output |
| 17 | COM1 | Ground |
| 18 | 1LDSYC | Main scan sync (H = Sync signal) |
| 19 | COM1 | |
| 20 | 5PLDAT | Data for printing (L = Off [Black]) |
| 21 | COM1 | Ground |
| 22 | 5UIBRS | UIB reset (active L) |
| | | |

Continued on the next page.

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----|----------|---------------------------------|
| 23 | COM1 G | round |
| 24 | 5RDENA T | k motor speed feedback signal |
| 25 | COM1 G | round |
| 26 | 5STPMV T | (motor enabled (L: Enabled) |
| 27 | COM1 G | round |
| 28 | 1UUSOD U | IB drive data |
| 29 | COM1 G | round |
| 30 | 1UUSID U | IB status data |
| 31 | фTG M | 1ain scan line start sync, from |
| | V | PU |
| 32 | COM1 G | round |
| 33 | + 5V Pe | ower supply |
| 34 | + 5V Po | ower supply |
| | | |

CN5 - DRU

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----|--------|----------------------------|
| 1 | + 24VD | Power supply |
| 2 | + 24VD | Power supply |
| 3 | + 24VD | Power supply |
| 4 | COM3 | Ground |
| 5 | COM3 | Ground |
| 6 | COM3 | Ground |
| 7 | 5MAINM | Main motor drive (L = On) |
| 8 | COM1 | Ground |
| 9 | 5MMLOK | Main motor lock (L = Lock) |
| 10 | COM1 | Ground |
| | | |

| 11 | 5REGRL | Registration clutch drive (L = On) |
|----|--------|--|
| 12 | COM1 | Ground |
| 13 | 5UFEED | Upper paper feed clutch drive (L = On) |
| 14 | COM1 | Ground |
| 15 | 5UCASU | Upper paper lift solenoid drive (L = On) |
| 16 | COM1 | Ground |
| 17 | 5REGST | Reg. sensor output (L = Paper present) |
| 18 | COM1 | Ground |
| 19 | 5CPOUT | Copy feed-out sensor output (L = Paper present) |
| 20 | COM1 | Ground |
| 21 | 50ZFAN | Ozone fan drive (L = On) |
| 22 | 5DEVLP | Development clutch drive (L = On) |
| 23 | COM1 | Ground |
| 24 | COM1 | Ground |
| 25 | + 5V | Power supply |
| 26 | + 5V | Power supply |
CN6 - Upper Paper Size Sensor

| Pin | Name | Function | |
|-----|--------|--------------------|--|
| 1 | COM1 | Ground | |
| 2 | COM1 | Ground | |
| 3 | 5UCAS2 | Signal from sensor | |
| 4 | 5UCAS1 | Signal from sensor | |
| 5 | 5UCAS0 | Signal from sensor | |
| 6 | COM1 | Ground | |

Upper cassette size sensor status table

| | | S | ize | | | |
|-------|----|----|-----|----|----|----|
| Pin | Β4 | B5 | Lg | A4 | Lt | A5 |
| 6-5 | н | L | Ĥ | L | Н | L |
| 6 - 4 | L | L | Н | Н | L | L |
| 6-3 | Н | Н | L | L | L | L |

CN7 - CCU Boards

| Pin | Name | Function | |
|-----|------|--------------|--|
| A1 | + 5V | Power supply | |
| B1 | + 5V | Power supply | |
| A2 | + 5V | Power supply | |
| B2 | + 5V | Power supply | |
| A3 | + 5V | Power supply | |
| B3 | + 5V | Power supply | |
| A4 | + 5V | Power supply | |
| B4 | + 5V | Power supply | |
| A5 | 1AB1 | Address bus | |
| B5 | COM1 | Ground | |

| A6 | 1AB2 Address bus |
|-----|-------------------|
| B6 | COM1 Ground |
| A7 | 1AB3 Address bus |
| B7 | COM1 Ground |
| A8 | 1AB4 Address bus |
| B8 | COM1 Ground |
| A9 | 1AB5 Address bus |
| B9 | COM1 Ground |
| A10 | 1AB6 Address bus |
| B10 | COM1 Ground |
| A11 | 1AB7 Address bus |
| B11 | COM1 Ground |
| A12 | 1AB8 Address bus |
| B12 | COM1 Ground |
| A13 | 1AB9 Address bus |
| B13 | COM1 Ground |
| A14 | 1AB10 Address bus |
| B14 | COM1 Ground |
| A15 | 1AB11 Address bus |
| B15 | COM1 Ground |
| A16 | 1D00 Data bus |
| B16 | COM1 Ground |
| A17 | 1D01 Data bus |
| B17 | COM1 Ground |
| A18 | 1D02 Data bus |
| B18 | COM1 Ground |
| A19 | 1D03 Data bus |
| B19 | COM1 Ground |

Continued on the next page

CN7 (Continued) - CCU Boards

| A201D04Data busA291INT33Interrupt request from G3CCU handshake port (read mode)A211D05Data busB291INT35Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (read mode)B21COM1GroundB291INT35Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (read mode)B22COM1GroundB305G3RSTG3 reset (L = reset)B22COM1GroundB305G4RSTG4 reset (L = reset)B23COM1GroundB31COM1GroundA245MEMRDMain cpu or DMA controller memory readA32COM1GroundB24COM1GroundA33COM1GroundA255MEMWRMain cpu or DMA controller memory writeB33COM1GroundB25COM1GroundB34COM1GroundA265BUSYCCU handshake memory busy (L selectA36+ 12VPower supplyB26COM1GroundA36+ 12VPower supplyB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chip selectB37COM2GroundA281INT32Interrupt request from G3CCU handshake port (write mode)B38COM2GroundA281INT34Interrupt request from G3CCU handshake port (write mode)B38COM2GroundB281INT34Interrupt request from G3CCU handshake port (write mode)A39- 12VPower supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port | Pin | Name | Function | | | |
|--|-----|--------|------------------------------|-----|--------|------------------------------|
| B20COM1Groundhandshake port (read mode)A211005Data busB2911NT35Interrupt request from G4CCUB21COM1GroundGareandGareandGareandA221006Data busA305G3RSTG3 reset (L = reset)B22COM1GroundB305G4RSTG4 reset (L = reset)B23COM1GroundB31COM1GroundA245MEMRDMain cpu or DMA controllerA32COM1GroundB24COM1GroundGroundA33COM1GroundB25COM1GroundB34COM1GroundA265BUSYCCU handshake memory busy (LA35+ 12VPower supplyB26COM1GroundA36+ 12VPower supplyB26COM1GroundA37COM2GroundB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chipB37COM2GroundB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chipB37COM2GroundA2811NT32Interrupt request from G3CCUB38COM2GroundA2811NT34Interrupt request from G4CCUA40-12VPower supplyB2811NT34Interrupt request from G4CCUA40-12VPower supplyB2811NT34Interrupt request from G4CCUA40-12VPower supplyB2811NT34Interrupt request from G4CCUA40-12VPower supplyB29-12V <td>A20</td> <td>1D04</td> <td>Data bus</td> <td>A29</td> <td>1INT33</td> <td>Interrupt request from G3CCU</td> | A20 | 1D04 | Data bus | A29 | 1INT33 | Interrupt request from G3CCU |
| A211D05Data busB291INT35Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (read mode)B21COM1GroundA305G3RSTG3 reset (L = reset)B22COM1GroundB305G4RSTG4 reset (L = reset)B231D07Data busA31COM1GroundB23COM1GroundB31COM1GroundA245MEMRDMain cpu or DMA controllerA32COM1GroundB24COM1GroundB33COM1GroundB25SMEMWRMain cpu or DMA controllerB33COM1Groundmemory writeA34COM1GroundGroundB25COM1GroundB34COM1GroundA265BUSYCCU handshake memory busy (LA35+ 12VPower supplyB26COM1GroundA36+ 12VPower supplyB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chip selectB37COM2GroundB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chip selectB37COM2GroundA281INT32Interrupt request from G3CCU handshake port (write mode)B38COM2GroundB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A39- 12VPower supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)B40- 12VPower supply | B20 | COM1 | Ground | | | handshake port (read mode) |
| B21COM1GroundA305G3RSTG3 reset (L = reset)A221D06Data busA305G4RSTG4 reset (L = reset)B22COM1GroundB305G4RSTG4 reset (L = reset)A231D07Data busA31COM1GroundB23COM1GroundB31COM1GroundA245MEMRDMain cpu or DMA controllerA32COM1GroundA255MEMWRMain cpu or DMA controllerB33COM1GroundA255MEMWRMain cpu or DMA controllerB33COM1GroundA255MEMWRMain cpu or DMA controllerB33COM1GroundA265BUSYCCU handshake memory busy (LA35+ 12VPower supplyB26COM1GroundA36+ 12VPower supplyB275G3CSG3 handshake memory chipB37COM2GroundB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chipB37COM2GroundA281INT32Interrupt request from G3CCUB38COM2GroundA281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCUA40-12VPower supplyB2811NT34Interrupt request from G4CCUA40-12VPower supplyB2811NT34Interrupt request from G4CCUA40-12VPower supplyB39-12VPower supplyB39-12VPower supply | A21 | 1D05 | Data bus | B29 | 1INT35 | Interrupt request from G4CCU |
| A221D06Data busA305G3RSTG3 reset (L = reset)B22COM1GroundB305G4RSTG4 reset (L = reset)A231D07Data busA31COM1GroundB23COM1GroundB31COM1GroundA245MEMRDMain cpu or DMA controllerA32COM1GroundB24COM1GroundB33COM1GroundA255MEMRMain cpu or DMA controllerB33COM1GroundA255MEMWRMain cpu or DMA controllerB33COM1GroundA265BUSYCCU handshake memory busy (LA35+ 12VPower supplyB26COM1GroundA36+ 12VPower supplyB275G3CSG3 handshake memory chip selectB37COM2GroundB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chip selectB37COM2GroundA281INT32Interrupt request from G3CCU handshake port (write mode)B38COM2GroundB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40- 12VPower supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40- 12VPower supply | B21 | COM1 | Ground | | | handshake port (read mode) |
| B22COM1GroundB305G4RSTG4 reset (L = reset)A231D07Data busA31COM1GroundB23COM1GroundB31COM1GroundA245MEMRDMain cpu or DMA controllerA32COM1GroundB24COM1GroundA33COM1GroundA255MEMRMain cpu or DMA controllerB32COM1GroundA255MEMWRMain cpu or DMA controllerB33COM1GroundA255MEWRMain cpu or DMA controllerB34COM1GroundB25COM1GroundB34COM1GroundA265BUSYCCU handshake memory busy (LA35+ 12VPower supplyB26COM1GroundA36+ 12VPower supplyB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chip selectB37COM2GroundB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chip selectB37COM2GroundA281INT32Interrupt request from G3CCU handshake port (write mode)A39- 12VPower supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40- 12VPower supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40- 12VPower supply | A22 | 1D06 | Data bus | A30 | 5G3RST | G3 reset (L = reset) |
| A231D07Data busA31COM1GroundB23COM1GroundB31COM1GroundA245MEMRDMain cpu or DMA controllerA32COM1GroundB24COM1GroundA33COM1GroundA255MEMWRMain cpu or DMA controllerB33COM1GroundA255MEMWRMain cpu or DMA controllerB33COM1GroundA255MEMWRMain cpu or DMA controllerB33COM1GroundB25COM1GroundB34COM1GroundA265BUSYCCU handshake memory busy (LB35+ 12VPower supplyB26COM1GroundA36+ 12VPower supplyB26COM1GroundA36+ 12VPower supplyB275G4CSG3 handshake memory chip selectB37COM2GroundB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chip selectB38COM2GroundA281INT32Interrupt request from G3CCU handshake port (write mode)B38COM2GroundB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40- 12VPower supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40- 12VPower supply | B22 | COM1 | Ground | B30 | 5G4RST | G4 reset (L = reset) |
| B23COM1GroundB31COM1GroundA245MEMRDMain cpu or DMA controller memory readA32COM1GroundB24COM1GroundA33COM1GroundA255MEMWRMain cpu or DMA controller memory writeB33COM1GroundB25COM1GroundB34COM1GroundA265BUSYCCU handshake memory busy (L = Busy)B35+ 12VPower supplyB26COM1GroundA36+ 12VPower supplyB26COM1GroundA36+ 12VPower supplyB275G3CSG3 handshake memory chip selectB37COM2GroundB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chip selectB38COM2GroundA281INT32Interrupt request from G3CCU handshake port (write mode)B38COM2GroundB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40- 12VPower supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40- 12VPower supply | A23 | 1D07 | Data bus | A31 | COM1 | Ground |
| A245MEMRDMain cpu or DMA controller memory readA32 B32COM1GroundB24COM1GroundA33COM1GroundA255MEMWRMain cpu or DMA controller memory writeB33COM1GroundB25COM1GroundB34COM1GroundA265BUSYCCU handshake memory busy (L = Busy)A35+ 12VPower supplyB26COM1GroundA36+ 12VPower supplyB26COM1GroundA36+ 12VPower supplyB275G3CSG3 handshake memory chip selectB37COM2GroundB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chip selectB37COM2GroundA281INT32Interrupt request from G3CCU handshake port (write mode)B38COM2GroundB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40- 12VPower supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40- 12VPower supply | B23 | COM1 | Ground | B31 | COM1 | Ground |
| B24COM1GroundB32COM1GroundA255MEMWRMain cpu or DMA controllerB33COM1GroundB25COM1GroundB34COM1GroundB25COM1GroundB34COM1GroundA265BUSYCCU handshake memory busy (LA35+ 12VPower supplyB26COM1GroundA36+ 12VPower supplyB26COM1GroundA36+ 12VPower supplyB275G3CSG3 handshake memory chipB36+ 12VPower supplyB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chipB37COM2GroundB281INT32Interrupt request from G3CCUB38COM2GroundB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCUA40- 12VPower supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCUA40- 12VPower supply | A24 | 5MEMRD | Main cpu or DMA controller | A32 | COM1 | Ground |
| B24COM1GroundA33COM1GroundA255MEMWRMain cpu or DMA controller memory writeB33COM1GroundB25COM1GroundB34COM1GroundA265BUSYCCU handshake memory busy (L = Busy)A35+ 12VPower supplyB26COM1GroundA36+ 12VPower supplyB26COM1GroundA36+ 12VPower supplyB275G3CSG3 handshake memory chip selectB37COM2GroundB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chip selectB37COM2GroundA281INT32Interrupt request from G3CCU handshake port (write mode)B38COM2GroundB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40- 12VPower supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40- 12VPower supply | | | memory read | B32 | COM1 | Ground |
| A255MEMWR memory writeMain cpu or DMA controller memory writeB33 A34COM1 GroundGroundB25COM1 A26GroundB34COM1 GroundGroundA265BUSY = Busy)CCU handshake memory busy (L = Busy)A35+ 12V B35Power supplyB26COM1 GroundGroundA36+ 12V Power supplyPower supplyB26COM1 GroundGroundA36+ 12V Power supplyA275G3CS SG3CSG3 handshake memory chip selectB36 A37+ 12V COM2Power supplyB275G4CS SelectG4 handshake memory chip selectB37 A38COM2 GroundGroundA281INT32Interrupt request from G3CCU handshake port (write mode)B38 A39 A39COM2 Power supplyGroundB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40 B40- 12V Power supplyPower supply | B24 | COM1 | Ground | A33 | COM1 | Ground |
| B25COM1GroundGroundGroundA265BUSYCCU handshake memory busy (LA35+ 12VPower supplyB26COM1GroundA36+ 12VPower supplyB26COM1GroundA36+ 12VPower supplyA275G3CSG3 handshake memory chipB36+ 12VPower supplyB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chipB37COM2GroundB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chipB37COM2GroundA281INT32Interrupt request from G3CCUB38COM2GroundA281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCUA40- 12VPower supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCUA40- 12VPower supply | A25 | 5MEMWR | Main cpu or DMA controller | B33 | COM1 | Ground |
| B25COM1GroundB34COM1GroundA265BUSYCCU handshake memory busy (LA35+ 12VPower supplyB26COM1GroundA36+ 12VPower supplyB275G3CSG3 handshake memory chipB36+ 12VPower supplyB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chipB37COM2GroundB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chipB37COM2GroundB281INT32Interrupt request from G3CCUB38COM2GroundB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCUA40- 12VPower supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCUA40- 12VPower supply | | | memory write | A34 | COM1 | Ground |
| A265BUSYCCU handshake memory busy (LA35+ 12VPower supplyB26COM1GroundA36+ 12VPower supplyA275G3CSG3 handshake memory chipB36+ 12VPower supplyB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chipB37COM2GroundB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chipB37COM2GroundA281INT32Interrupt request from G3CCUB38COM2GroundA281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCUA40- 12VPower supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCUA40- 12VPower supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCUA40- 12VPower supply | B25 | COM1 | Ground | B34 | COM1 | Ground |
| B26COM1GroundB35+ 12VPower supplyA275G3CSG3 handshake memory chipB36+ 12VPower supplyA275G3CSG3 handshake memory chipB36+ 12VPower supplyB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chipB37COM2GroundB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chipB37COM2GroundA281INT32Interrupt request from G3CCUB38COM2Groundhandshake port (write mode)A39- 12VPower supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCUA40- 12VPower supplyB40- 12VPower supplyPower supply | A26 | 5BUSY | CCU handshake memory busy (L | A35 | + 12V | Power supply |
| B26COM1GroundA36+ 12VPower supplyA275G3CSG3 handshake memory chipB36+ 12VPower supplyB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chipB37COM2GroundB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chipB37COM2GroundA281INT32Interrupt request from G3CCUB38COM2Groundhandshake port (write mode)A39- 12VPower supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCUA40- 12VPower supplyB40- 12VPower supplyPower supply | | | = Busy) | B35 | + 12V | Power supply |
| A275G3CSG3 handshake memory chip selectB36 A37+ 12V COM2Power supply GroundB275G4CSG4 handshake memory chip selectB37COM2 GroundGroundA281INT32Interrupt request from G3CCU handshake port (write mode)B38 A39COM2 GroundGroundB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40 B40- 12V Power supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40 B40- 12V Power supply | B26 | COM1 | Ground | A36 | + 12V | Power supply |
| B275G4CSG4 handshake memory chip selectA37COM2GroundA281INT32Interrupt request from G3CCU handshake port (write mode)B38COM2GroundB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A39- 12V B39Power supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40- 12V B40Power supply | A27 | 5G3CS | G3 handshake memory chip | B36 | + 12V | Power supply |
| B275G4CSG4 handshake memory chip selectB37COM2GroundA281INT32Interrupt request from G3CCU handshake port (write mode)B38COM2GroundB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A39- 12V Power supplyPower supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40- 12V Power supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40- 12V Power supply | | | select | A37 | COM2 | Ground |
| A281INT32Interrupt request from G3CCU handshake port (write mode)A38 B38COM2 COM2Ground GroundB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40 B40- 12V - 12VPower supply Power supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40 B40- 12V - 12VPower supply | B27 | 5G4CS | G4 handshake memory chip | B37 | COM2 | Ground |
| A281INT32Interrupt request from G3CCU handshake port (write mode)B38 A39 B39COM2 -12VGround Power supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40 B40-12VPower supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCU handshake port (write mode)A40 B40-12VPower supply | | | select | A38 | COM2 | Ground |
| handshake port (write mode)A39 B39- 12VPower supply Power supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCUA40 B40- 12VPower supply Power supplyB281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCUA40 B40- 12VPower supply | A28 | 1INT32 | Interrupt request from G3CCU | B38 | COM2 | Ground |
| B281INT34Interrupt request from G4CCUB39- 12VPower supplyhandshake port (write mode)B40- 12VPower supply | | - | handshake port (write mode) | A39 | - 12V | Power supply |
| B28 1INT34 Interrupt request from G4CCU A40 - 12V Power supply handshake port (write mode) B40 - 12V Power supply | | | | B39 | - 12V | Power supply |
| handshake port (write mode) B40 - 12V Power supply | B28 | 1INT34 | Interrupt request from G4CCU | A40 | - 12V | Power supply |
| | - | • | handshake port (write mode) | B40 | - 12V | Power supply |

CN8 - VPU

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----|---------|--------------------------------|
| A1 | | |
| to | + 5V | Power supply |
| B3 | | |
| A4 | | |
| to | COM1 | Ground |
| B6 | | |
| A7 | 1SCK8M | ADCR drive clock (8 MHz) |
| B7 | 1CK5M | Video processor clock (5MHz) |
| A8 | COM1 | Ground |
| B8 | COM1 | Ground |
| A9 | 5VPURD | DIPP read enable |
| B9 | 5RESET | VPU reset |
| A10 | 5VPUWR | DIPP write enable |
| B10 | 5CSVPU | VPU chip select |
| A11 | 1TRSCN | Scan line start signal |
| B11 | 1SAB00 | DIPP access address bus (slave |
| | | cpu) |
| A12 | COM1 | Ground |
| B12 | COM1 | Ground |
| A13 | 5SDCR | ADCR strobe |
| | ST0 | |
| B13 | 1AD4 | Address bus (ADCR) |
| A14 | 5SDCR | ADCR chip select |
| | CS0 | |
| B14 | 1AD3 | Address bus (ADCR) |
| A15 | 5WRMODE | Main cpu write mode |
| B15 | 1AD2 | Address bus (ADCR) |
| A16 | | Not connected |

| B16 | 1AD1 | Address bus (ADCR) |
|-----|---------|-------------------------------------|
| A17 | COM1 | Ground |
| B17 | COM1 | Ground |
| A18 | 1FRST | FIFO reset |
| B18 | ΦTG | Main scan line start sync, from UIB |
| A19 | COM1 | Not connected |
| B19 | | Not connected on VPU |
| A20 | 5INT26 | Interrupt from ADCR |
| B20 | 1VPUINT | Interrupt from DIPP |
| A21 | 5EMPTY | VPU FIFO empty |
| B21 | 5RQDCR1 | DMA request from ADCR |
| A22 | 5FULL | VPU FIFO full |
| B22 | | Not connected |
| A23 | 1HALF | VPU FIFO status signal |
| B23 | SP3 | Not connected on VPU |
| A24 | SP5 | Not connected on VPU |
| B24 | 1ALMOST | VPU FIFO status signal |
| A25 | COM1 | Ground |
| B25 | SP4 | Not connected on VPU |
| A26 | | |
| to | COM1 | Ground |
| B27 | | |
| A28 | 1SDB01 | SBU drive signal |
| B28 | 1SDB00 | SBU drive signal |
| A29 | 1SDB03 | SBU drive signal |
| B29 | 1SDB02 | SBU drive signal |
| A30 | 1SDB05 | SBU drive signal |
| B30 | 1SDB04 | SBU drive signal |
| | | |

Continued on the next page

CN8 (Continued) - VPU

| Pin | Name Function |
|-----|-------------------------|
| A31 | 1SDB07 SBU drive signal |
| B31 | 1SDB06 SBU drive signal |
| A32 | 1D01 Data bus |
| B32 | 1D00 Data bus |
| A33 | 1D03 Data bus |
| B33 | COM1 Ground |
| A34 | COM1 Ground |
| B34 | 1D02 Data bus |
| A35 | 1D05 Data bus |
| B35 | 1D04 Data bus |
| A36 | COM1 Ground |
| B36 | 1D06 Data bus |
| A37 | 1D07 Data bus |
| B37 | COM1 Ground |
| A38 | 1D09 Data bus |
| B38 | 1D08 Data bus |
| A39 | COM1 Ground |
| B39 | 1D10 Data bus |
| A40 | 1D11 Data bus |
| B40 | COM1 Ground |
| A41 | 1D13 Data bus |
| B41 | 1D12 Data bus |
| A42 | COM1 Ground |
| B42 | 1D14 Data bus |
| A43 | 1D15 Data bus |
| B43 | COM1 Ground |
| A44 | + 12V Power supply |
| B44 | + 12V Power supply |

| A45 | + 12V Power supply |
|-----|--------------------------------------|
| B45 | + 12V Power supply |
| A46 | COM2 Ground |
| B46 | COM2 Ground |
| A47 | COM2 Ground |
| B47 | COM2 Ground |
| A48 | COM2 Ground |
| B48 | COM2 Ground |
| A49 | 12V Power supply |
| B49 | 12V Power supply |
| A50 | - 12V Power supply |
| B50 | 12V Power supply |

CN9 - PSU

| - | | _ |
|-----|--------------------------------------|---|
| Pin | Name Function | |
| 1 | + 24VD Power supply | |
| 2 | + 24VD Power supply | |
| 3 | + 24VD Power supply | |
| 4 | COM3 Ground | |
| 5 | COM3 Ground | |
| 6 | COM3 Ground | |
| 7 | COM3 Ground | |
| 8 | + 12V Power supply | |
| 9 | COM2 Ground | |
| 10 | COM2 Ground | |
| 11 | 12V Power supply | |
| 12 | Not connected | |
| 13 | XTHERM Fusing thermistor output | |
| 14 | COM1 Ground | |

CN10 - PSU

2 3 4

| Pin | Name | Function |
|--------|------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 | + 5V | Power supply |
| 2 | + 5V | Power supply |
| 3 | + 5V | Power supply |
| 4 | + 5V | Power supply |
| 5 | COM1 | Ground |
| 6 | COM1 | Ground |
| 7 | COM1 | Ground |
| 8 | COM1 | Ground |
| 9 | 5HETEN | Fusing lamp enable (L = On) |
| 10 | 1POWON | + 24VD enable (H = On) |
| 11 | 5POWOF | Main power dropout |
| 12 | 1DSKON | Not connected |
| 13 | 1PSUFN | Not connected |
| 14 | 1CVOPN | H: Upper unit or copy exit cover |
| | | open |
| 15 | 50VHT | L: PSU overheated |
| CN11 - | SCU | |
| | | |
| Se | e SCU CN3. | |
| CN12 - | Hard Disk | |
| Pin | Name | Function |
| 1 | COM1 | Ground |

5REDUC L: Write current decreased

COM1 Ground 5HSEL2 Head 2 select

| 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 9 20 21 | COM1 Ground 5WGATE Read/write enable (H = Read) COM1 Ground 5SECMP Seek completed COM1 Ground 5TRAK0 L: Head at track 0 COM1 Ground 5WFALT L: Head write error, will retry COM1 Ground 5HSEL0 Head 0 select COM1 Ground JP Ground link, CN12 - CN13 COM1 Ground 5HSEL1 Head 1 select COM1 Ground 5INDEX 1 pulse/disk rotation COM1 Ground 5BEADY Hard disk ready |
|--|---|
| 17 | COM1 Ground |
| 18 | 5HSEL1 Head 1 select |
| 19 | COM1 Ground |
| 20 | 5INDEX 1 pulse/disk rotation |
| 21 | COM1 Ground |
| 22 | 5READY Hard disk ready |
| 23 | COM1 Ground |
| 24 | 5STEP Head stepper motor pulse |
| 25 | COM1 Ground |
| 26 | 5DSEL1 Drive 1 select |
| 27 | COM1 Ground |
| 28 | COM1 Ground |
| 29 | COM1 Ground |
| 30 | COM1 Ground |
| 31 | COM1 Ground |
| 32 | COM1 Ground |
| 33 | COM1 Ground |
| 34 | 5DIREC Head motion direction (L = In- |
| | ward) |

CN13 - Hard Disk

| Pin | Name Function |
|-----|------------------------------------|
| 1 | 5DSELD L. Hard disk drive selected |
| 2 | COM1 Ground |
| 3 | COM1 Ground |
| 4 | COM1 Ground |
| 5 | COM1 Ground |
| 6 | COM1 Ground |
| 7 | JP Ground link between CN12 and |
| | CN13 |
| 8 | COM1 Ground |
| 9 | COM1 Ground |
| 10 | COM1 Ground |
| 11 | COM1 Ground |
| 12 | COM1 Ground |
| 13 | 5MFMWP Write data, + ve signal |
| 14 | 5MFMWN Write data, - ve signal |
| 15 | COM1 Ground |
| 16 | COM1 Ground |
| 17 | 5MFMRN Read data, - ve signal |
| 18 | 5MFMRP Read data, + ve signal |
| 19 | COM1 Ground |
| 20 | COM1 Ground |
| | |

CN14 - Upper Cassette Sensors

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----|--------|---|
| 1 | 5UPEXT | Upper paper end sensor (H = No paper) |
| 2 | 5UPHGH | Upper paper height sensor (H = Paper level low) |
| 3 | 5UPNED | Upper paper near-end sensor (L = Near-end) |
| 4 | COM1 | Ground |
| 5 | + 5V | Power supply |

CN15 - Bar Code Reader, via BSRU

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----|-----------|-------------------------------|
| 1 | 1SDATA Ba | r code reader start-up signal |
| 2 | 1RDATA Da | ata from bar code reader |
| 3 | 1RSEND No | t used (possible future RS- |
| | 23 | 32C application) |
| 4 | 1CSEND No | t used (possible future RS- |
| | 23 | 32C application) |
| 5 | 1DSRDY No | ot used |
| 6 | + 5V Po | wer supply |
| 7 | 1DTRDY No | ot used |
| 8 | COM1 Gr | ound |
| 9 | FG Gr | ound |

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----|--------|--------------------|
| 1 | + 24VD | Power supply |
| 2 | 5HDFAN | Fan drive (L = On) |

CN17 - Power Pack, Toner End Sensor, Right Cover Switch

| Pin | Name Function |
|-----|---------------------------------------|
| 1 | + 5V Power supply |
| 2 | COM1 Ground |
| 3 | 5TONER Toner end sensor (Constant L = |
| | Toner present) |
| 4 | 5DEVCL Rt. cover switch (L = Closed) |
| 5 | + 24VD Power supply |
| 6 | COM3 Ground |
| 7 | 5PRECH Charge corona (L = On) |
| 8 | 5TRACH Transfer corona (L = On) |
| 9 | 5DBIAS Development bias (L = On) |
| 10 | 1TRLEK Transfer leak (H = Leak) |

3. VPU

CN1 - SPU

See SPU CN8.

The following pins are not connected on the VPU: A16, A19, B19, B22, B23, A24, B25.

CN2 - SBU

| Pin | Name Function |
|-----|---|
| 1 | COM2 Ground |
| 2 | XVIDEO Analog video signal |
| 3 | COM2 Ground |
| 4 | 1TGCLK CCD drive clock: ϕ SH |
| 5 | COM2 Ground |
| 6 | 1RGCLK CCD drive clock: <i>p</i> RS |
| 7 | COM2 Ground |
| 8 | 1SCLK CCD drive clock: ϕ 1, ϕ 2 |
| 9 | COM2 Ground |
| 10 | + 12V Power supply |
| 11 | COM2 Ground |
| 12 | 12V Power supply |
| 13 | COM1 Ground |
| 14 | + 5V Power supply |
| 15 | Not connected |
| 16 | Not connected |

4. SBU

CN1 - VPU

See VPU CN2.

5. DRU

-

CN1 - Development Unit, Registration Clutch, and Upper Cassette Drive

| PinNameFunction1+ 24VDDev. clutch power supply26DEVLPDevelopment clutch drive (L = On)3+ 24VDUpper paper feed clutch power supply46UFEEDUpper paper feed clutch drive (L = On)5+ 24VDUpper paper lift solenoid power supply66UCASUUpper paper lift solenoid drive (L = On)7+ 24VDRegistration clutch power supply86REGRLRegistration clutch drive (L = On) | | | |
|--|-----|--------|---|
| 1 + 24VD Dev. clutch power supply 2 6DEVLP Development clutch drive (L = On) 3 + 24VD Upper paper feed clutch power supply 4 6UFEED Upper paper feed clutch drive (L = On) 5 + 24VD Upper paper lift solenoid power supply 6 6UCASU Upper paper lift solenoid drive (L = On) 7 + 24VD Registration clutch power supply 8 6REGRL Registration clutch drive (L = On) | Pin | Name | Function |
| 2 6DEVLP Development clutch drive (L = On) 3 + 24VD Upper paper feed clutch power supply 4 6UFEED Upper paper feed clutch drive (L = On) 5 + 24VD Upper paper lift solenoid power supply 6 6UCASU Upper paper lift solenoid drive (L = On) 7 + 24VD Registration clutch power supply 8 6REGRL Registration clutch drive (L = On) | 1 | + 24VD | Dev. clutch power supply |
| 3 + 24VD Upper paper feed clutch power supply 4 6UFEED Upper paper feed clutch drive (L = On) 5 + 24VD Upper paper lift solenoid power supply 6 6UCASU Upper paper lift solenoid drive (L = On) 7 + 24VD Registration clutch power supply 8 6REGRL Registration clutch drive (L = On) | 2 | 6DEVLP | Development clutch drive (L = On) |
| 4 6UFEED Upper paper feed clutch drive (L = On) 5 + 24VD Upper paper lift solenoid power supply 6 6UCASU Upper paper lift solenoid drive (L = On) 7 + 24VD Registration clutch power supply 8 6REGRL Registration clutch drive (L = On) | 3 | + 24VD | Upper paper feed clutch power supply |
| 5 + 24VD Upper paper lift solenoid power supply 6 6UCASU Upper paper lift solenoid drive (L = On) 7 + 24VD Registration clutch power supply 8 6REGRL Registration clutch drive (L = On) | 4 | 6UFEED | Upper paper feed clutch drive (L = On) |
| 6 6UCASU Upper paper lift solenoid drive (L = On) 7 + 24VD Registration clutch power supply 8 6REGRL Registration clutch drive (L = On | 5 | + 24VD | Upper paper lift solenoid power supply |
| 7 + 24VD Registration clutch power supply 8 6REGRL Registration clutch drive (L = On | 6 | 6UCASU | Upper paper lift solenoid drive (L = On) |
| 8 6REGRL Registration clutch drive (L = On | 7 | + 24VD | Registration clutch power supply |
| | 8 | 6REGRL | Registration clutch drive (L = On |

CN2 - Charge Corona Fan and Main Motor Drive, and Copy Feed-out Sensor

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----|--------|----------------------------------|
| 1 | + 24VD | Charge corona fan power supply |
| 2 | 60BMFN | Charge corona fan drive (L = On) |
| 3 | + 24VD | Main motor power supply |
| 4 | COM3 | Ground |
| 5 | 6MAINM | Main motor drive (L = On) |
| 6 | 6MMLOK | Main motor lock (L = Lock) |
| 7 | + 5V | Power supply |
| 8 | 6CPOUT | Copy feed-out sensor output (L |
| | | = Paper present) |
| 9 | COM1 | Ground |

CN3 - SPU

See SPU CN5.

CN4 - Front Transfer Corona Fan

| Pin | Name | Function | |
|-----|----------------|-------------------|--|
| 1 | + 24VD F | ower supply | |
| 2 | 5FRNFN F | an drive (L = On) | |
| CN | I5 - Rear Trar | nsfer Corona Fan | |
| Pin | Name | Function | |
| 1 | + 24VD F | ower supply | |
| 2 | 5RERFN F | an drive (L = On | |
| | | | |

CN6 - Registration Sensor

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----|--------|----------------------------|
| 1 | + 5V | Power supply |
| 2 | 6REGST | Reg. sensor output (H = No |
| | | paper) |
| 3 | COM1 | Ground |
| 4 | | Not connected |

6. UIB

CN1 - DSB

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----|--------|--|
| 1 | 5DOCFD | ADF clutch drive $(L = On)$ |
| 2 | 5STAMP | Stamp solenoid (L = On) |
| 3 | 5DOCEX | Document feed-out clutch drive (L = On) |
| 4 | 5PPTBL | Document sensor output (H = No paper) |
| 5 | 5PPSCN | Scan line sensor output (H = No paper) |
| 6 | 5DCWA3 | A3 [11.7"] document width sen- sor (H = Less than 11.7 ") |
| 7 | 5DCWB4 | B4 $[10.1"]$ document width sensor (H = Less than 10.1") |
| 8 | 5SCNCL | Scanner cover switch (H = Cover open) |
| 9 | 5MDFSW | Manual feed switch (H = Manual feed, L = ADF) |
| 10 | 5DISCH | Quenching lamp (L = On) |

CN2 - Pentagonal Mirror Motor and Driver

| Pin | Name | Function | V |
|-----|----------|-----------------------|---|
| 1 | 5PMLOK N | Motor lock (L = Lock) | |
| 2 | 5POLME N | Notor drive (L = On) | |
| 3 | COM3 C | Ground | |
| 4 | + 24VD F | ower supply | |

CN3 - Fluorescent Lamps

| Pin | Name | Function | |
|-----|---------------------|-----------------------|--|
| 1 | + 24VD Power supply | | |
| 2 | 5PHTON | Preheat (L = Preheat) | |
| 3 | 5DLAMP | Lamp drive (L = On) | |
| 4 | COM3 | Ground | |
| | | | |

CN4 - LSD, Master Belt Home Position Sensor, Toner Overflow Sensor

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----|----------|----------------------------------|
| 1 | + 5V P | ower supply |
| 2 | COM1 C | Ground |
| 3 | 1EXTON T | oner overflow sensor (H = Over- |
| | f | low) |
| 4 | - 12V F | ower supply |
| 5 | + 5V F | ower supply |
| 6 | COM2 C | Ground |
| 7 | 1LDSET L | aser main scan sync |
| 8 | + 5V F | ower supply |
| 9 | 5HOMPS N | laster belt home position sensor |
| | | (L = Home) |
| 10 | COM1 C | around |

CN5 - Master Unit Interlock Switch

| Pin | Name Function |
|--------|--|
| 1 2 | + 12V Power to switch + 12VR Power from switch |
| CN | 5 - SPU |
| | See SPU CN4. |
| CN | 7 - DSB |
| Pin | Name Function |
| 1 | + 24VD Power supply |
| 2 | + 24VD Power supply |
| 3 | COM3 Ground |
| 4 | COM3 Ground |
| 5 | + 5V Power supply |
| 6 | COM1 Ground |
| 7 | 1SPCK0 Master belt motor drive signal |
| 8 | COM1 Ground |
| 9 | 1SPCK1 Master belt motor drive signal |
| 10 | COM1 Ground |
| 11 | 1SPENA Master belt motor phase A on/off (L = Off) |
| 12 | 1SPENB Master belt motor phase B on/off (L = Off) |

CN8 - LDDR

| Pin | Name | Function | |
|-----|--------|----------------------------------|--|
| 1 | COM2 | Ground | |
| 2 | XLPDET | Laser power feedback signal | |
| 3 | COM2 | Ground | |
| 4 | XLPCTL | Laser power control signal | |
| 5 | COM1 | Ground | |
| 6 | 5LDDAT | Data for printing (L = Diode off | |
| | | Black) | |
| 7 | COM2 | Ground | |
| 8 | - 12VT | Power supply | |
| 9 | + 12VT | Power supply | |

CN9 - Scanner Motor

| Pin | Name Function |
|-----|-----------------------------|
| 1 | SPHA0 Scanner motor phase A |
| 2 | + 24VD Power supply _ |
| 3 | SPHA1 Scanner motor phase A |
| 4 | SPHB0 Scanner motor phase B |
| 5 | + 24VD Power supply |
| 6 | SPHB1 Scanner motor phase B |

7. DSB

CN1 - Manual Feed Switch

| Pin | Name | Function | | | |
|---|----------------------|---|--|--|--|
| 5MDFSW Manual feed switch (L = Manual Feed H = ADF) | | Manual feed switch (L = Manual Feed H = ADF) | | | |
| 2 | COM1 | Ground | | | |
| CN | CN2 - Quenching Lamp | | | | |
| Pin | Name | Function | | | |
| 1 | + 24VD Power supply | | | | |
| 2 | 5DISCH | Quenching lamp drive (L = On) | | | |
| CN3 - Scan Line Sensor | | | | | |
| Pin | Name | Function | | | |
| 1 | + 5V Power supply | | | | |
| 2 5PPSCN Scan line sensor (H = No paper | | | | | |

3 COM1 Ground

CN4 - UIB

See SPU CN1.

CN5 - UIB

See SPU CN7.

CN6 - Stamp, ADF Clutch, Document Feed-out Clutch, Master Belt Motor

| Pin | Name | Function | |
|-----|--------|----------------------------------|--|
| 1 | + 24VD | Power supply | |
| 2 | 5STAMP | Stamp solenoid drive (L = On) | |
| 3 | + 24VD | Power supply | |
| 4 | 5DOCFD | ADF clutch drive $(L = On)$ | |
| 5 | + 24VD | Power supply | |
| 6 | 5DOCEX | Document feed-out clutch (L = | |
| | | On) | |
| 7 | OPHA0 | Master belt motor phase A | |
| 8 | OPHB0 | Master belt motor phase <u>B</u> | |
| 9 | OPHA1 | Master belt motor phase A | |
| 10 | OPHB1 | Master belt motor phase B | |

8. LIB

CN1 - SPU

See SPU CN3.

CN2 - Lower Front Cover Switch, Lower Paper Feed Motor, and Lower Paper Feed Solenoid

| Pin | Name Function |
|-----|---|
| 1 | + 24VD Power supply |
| 2 | COM3 Ground |
| 3 | 5LCASM Lower paper feed motor drive (L = On) |
| 4 | 5LMLOK Lower paper feed motor lock (L = Lock) |
| 5 | + 24VD Power supply |
| 6 | 5LFEED Lower paper feed solenoid drive $(L = On)$ |
| 7 | 5LCOPN Lower front cover switch (L = cover open) |
| 8 | COM1 Ground |

CN3 - Lower Paper Lift Motor, Lower Paper End, Near-end, and Height Sensors

| Pin | Name | Function | |
|-----|--------|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1 | + 5V | Power supply | |
| 2 | COM1 | Ground | |
| 3 | 5LPEND | Lower paper end sensor (L = No | |
| | | paper) | |
| 4 | + 5V | Power supply | |
| 5 | COM1 | Ground | |
| 6 | 5LPNED | Lower paper near-end sensor (| |
| | | = Near-end) | |
| 7 | + 5V | Power supply | |
| 8 | COM1 | Ground | |
| 9 | 5LPHGH | Lower paper height sensor (H = | |
| | | paper level low) | |
| 10 | + 24VD | Power for motor | |
| 11 | 5LCASU | Lower paper lift motor drive (L = | |
| | | On) | |
| _ | | | |

CN4 - Jam Removal Switch, Lower Paper Size Sensor, Lower Cassette Switch

| Pin | Name | Function | |
|-----|---------|---------------------------------|--|
| 1 | COM1 | Ground, from lower cassette sw. | |
| 2 | 5ENSCOM | Ground, to lower cassette sw. | |
| 3 | 1LDOPN | Jam removal switch (L = standby | |
| | | position) | |
| 4 | COM1 | Ground | |
| 5 | COM1 | Ground | |
| 6 | COM1 | Ground, from paper size sense | |
| | | to lower cassette switch | |
| 7 | 5LCAS2 | Lower paper size sensor | |
| 8 | 5LCAS1 | Lower paper size sensor | |
| 9 | 5LCAS0 | Lower paper size sensor | |
| 10 | 5ENSCOM | Ground. to lower cassette sw. | |

Lower cassette size sensor status table

| Size | | | | | | |
|-------|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| Pin | Β4 | B5 | Lg | A4 | Lt | A5 |
| 4 - 9 | н | L | Ĥ | L | Н | L |
| 4 - 8 | L | L | Н | Н | L | L |
| 4 - 7 | Н | Н | L | L | L | L |

9. OPU

CN1 - SCU

See SCU CN2.

CN2 - Internal connector to keyboard CN3 - Internal connector to LCD

CN4 - LCD Brightness Control

| Pin | Name Function | 1 | | | |
|-----------|-------------------|--------------|--|--|--|
| 1 | 1 - 12V LCD power | | | | |
| 2 | Vo Output voltage | from control | | | |
| 3 | + 5V Power supply | | | | |
| 4 | COM1 Ground | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| 10. PSU | | | | | |
| CN1 - SPU | | | | | |
| | See SPU CN9. | | | | |
| CN2 | CN2 - SPU | | | | |
| | See SPU CN10. | | | | |
| CN | 3 - Hard Disk | | | | |

| Pin | Name | Function | |
|-----|-------|--------------|--|
| 1 | + 12V | Power supply | |
| 2 | COM1 | Ground | |
| 3 | COM1 | Ground | |
| 4 | + 5V | Power supply | |

CN4 - Upper Unit and Right Cover Interlock Switches

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----|----------|---------------------|
| 1 | + 24V P | ower, from switches |
| 2 | + 24V P | ower, to switches |
| 3 | COM1 C | Ground |
| 4 | 1CVOPN I | H = Cover open |

CN5 - Fusing Unit

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----|------------|------------------------|
| 1 | SWAC - L A | Ac power - live |
| 2 | SWAC - N A | Ac power - neutral |
| 3 | N.C. N | Not used |
| 4 | XTHERM 1 | Thermistor output |
| 5 | + 5V T | hermistor power supply |

CN6 - Main Power Inlet

| Pin | Name | Function | |
|-----|------|----------------------|--|
| 1 | L | Live ac power supply | |
| 2 | N | Neutral | |

CN7 - To Main Switch

Pin assignment: same as CN6

CN8 - Internal connector; carries main power

CN9 - From Main Switch

Pin assignment: same as CN6

CN10 - From Arrestor Ground (G3NCU)

CN11 - PSU Fan

| Pin | Name | Function | |
|-----|-------|--------------|--|
| 1 | + 12V | Power supply | |
| 2 | COM3 | Ground | |

CN12 - Internal connector; carries main power

| 11. G3 CCU | |
|--------------|--|
| CN1 - SPU | |
| See SPU CN7. | |
| CN2 - Modem | |

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----|---------|-------------------|
| A1 | COM1 | Ground |
| B1 | 5WR | Write enable |
| A2 | + 5V | Power supply |
| B2 | + 5V | Power supply |
| A3 | 1DT6 | Data bus |
| B3 | 5CSMDM | Chip select |
| A4 | 1DT7 | Data bus |
| B4 | 1A2 | Address bus |
| A5 | 1DT5 | Data bus |
| B5 | 1A0 | Address bus |
| A6 | | Not used |
| B6 | 5IRQ2 | Interrupt request |
| A7 | | Not used |
| B7 | COM1 | Ground |
| A8 | 1DT3 | Data bus |
| B8 | 5CD | Carrier detect |
| A9 | | Not used |
| B9 | 1ECKMDM | Modem chip select |
| A10 | COM1 | Ground |
| B10 | | Not used |
| A11 | | Not used |

| B11 | COM1 Ground |
|-----|--------------------------------------|
| A12 | 1DT1 Data bus |
| B12 | Not used |
| A13 | Not used |
| B13 | + 12V Power supply |
| A14 | 1A1 Address bus |
| B14 | 1DT2 Data bus |
| A15 | 1DT0 Data bus |
| B15 | + 5V Power supply |
| A16 | 1DT4 Data bus |
| B16 | 5IRQ1 Interrupt request |
| A17 | COM1 Ground |
| B17 | COM2 Ground |
| A18 | XUVLT Not used |
| B18 | 5RST Modem reset |
| A19 | 12V Power supply |
| B19 | TXL Data for transmission to PSTN |
| A20 | COM2 Ground |
| B20 | RXL Received data from PSTN |

CN3 - G3 NCU

| Pin | Name | Function | |
|-----|---------|-------------------------------|--|
| A1 | HYBRXL | Rx signal, from line to modem | |
| B1 | COM2 | Ground | |
| A2 | HYBTXL | Tx signal, to line from modem | |
| B2 | COM2 | Ground | |
| A3 | HIRXL | Not used | |
| B3 | COM2 | Not used | |
| A4 | XMICIN | Not used | |
| B4 | COM2 | Not used | |
| A5 | PROG0 | To variable resistor | |
| B5 | PROG1 | From variable resistor | |
| A6 | 1RINGCK | Ringing signal | |
| B6 | N.C. | Not connected | |
| A7 | 6NCUSPI | G3NCU status | |
| B7 | COM1 | Ground | |
| A8 | 5NCUSPO | G3NCU commands | |
| B8 | COM1 | Ground | |
| A9 | 5NCUCK | G3NCU command/status transfer | |
| | | clock | |
| B9 | COM1 | Ground | |
| A10 | 5NCUDP | Not used | |
| B10 | COM1 | Ground | |
| A11 | 6NCUSEL | G3NCU chip select signal | |
| B11 | COM1 | Ground | |

| A12 | 6NCULD | Command/status data S/P convert signal |
|-----|---------|--|
| B12 | COM1 | Ground |
| A13 | 6NCULTC | Command/status data transfer latch |
| B13 | COM1 | Ground |
| A14 | 6NCURST | Command/status data reset |
| B14 | COM1 | Ground |
| A15 | + 5V | Power supply |
| B15 | + 5V | Power supply |
| A16 | + 5V | Power supply |
| B16 | COM1 | Ground |
| A17 | COM1 | Ground |
| B17 | COM1 | Ground |

CN4 - Reserved for future applications

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----|-------|----------|
| 1 | 5SWHK | |
| 2 | COM2 | Ground |
| 3 | VTX | |
| 4 | VRX | |

CN5 - Speaker

| Pin | Name | Function | |
|-----|--------|----------|--|
| 1 | XPHAUD | | |
| 2 | COM2 | Ground | |

CN6 - Reserved for future applications

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----|--------|----------|
| A3 | COM2 | Ground |
| B3 | COM1 | Ground |
| A4 | COM2 | |
| B4 | COM1 | Ground |
| A5 | 1HD4 | Data bus |
| B5 | 1HD0 | Data bus |
| A6 | 1HD4 | Data bus |
| B6 | 1HD1 | Data bus |
| A7 | 1HD6 | Data bus |
| B7 | 1HD2 | Data bus |
| A8 | 1HD7 | Data bus |
| B8 | IHD3 | Data bus |
| A9 | 5HRD1 | |
| A10 | 1RDY1 | |
| A11 | 5HWT1 | |
| A12 | 5RD1H | |
| A13 | 5INT1R | |
| A14 | 5INT1W | |
| A25 | COM1 | |
| B25 | COM1 | Ground |

Other pins are not used.

CN7 - Not used

| Pin | Name | Function | |
|-----|-------|---------------|--|
| 1 | - 12V | Power supply | |
| 2 | + 12V | Power supply | |
| 3 | + 5VA | Power supply | |
| 4 | | Not connected | |
| 5 | COM1 | Ground | |
| 6 | 5ADCK | | |
| 7 | COM1 | Ground | |
| 8 | 5EYSY | | |
| 9 | COM1 | Ground | |
| 10 | 1EQMD | | |
| | | | |

CN8 - Microphone (Voice Message Storage)

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----------------------------------|------------|----------|
| 1 | EXT EMIC N | lot used |
| 2 EXT DMIC Signal from microphone | | |
| 3 | COM2 C | Ground |
| | | |

12. G3 NCU

CN1 - G3 CCU

See G3 CCU CN3.

CN2 - Network/External Telephone

| Pin | Name | Function |
|-----|-----------|----------------------|
| 1 | XFAXL1 Te | elephone line |
| 2 | XFAXL2 Te | elephone line |
| 3 | XTEL1 H | andset |
| 4 | XTEL2 H | andset |
| 5 | XGS G | round start terminal |

CN3 - Not used

| Pin | Name | Function | |
|-----|----------------|----------|--|
| 4 | XFAXL1 | | |
| 5 | XFAXL2 | | |
| 7 | XPROG2 | | |
| 8 | XPROG3 | | |
| CN | I4 - Not used | | |
| Pin | Name | Function | |
| 4 | XFAXL3 | | |
| 5 | XFAXL4 | | |
| CN | CN5 - Not used | | |

| Pin | Name | Function | |
|-----|-------|----------|--|
| 3 | XTEL1 | | |
| 4 | XTEL2 | | |

CN6 - Not used

| Pin | Name | Function | | |
|-----|--------------------------|---------------------------------|--|--|
| 1 | XTELCN1 | | | |
| 2 | XTELCN2 | | | |
| | | | | |
| 13. | BSRU | | | |
| CN | CN1 - SPU. See SPU CN15. | | | |
| CN | 2 - Bar Coo | le Reader | | |
| Pin | Name | Function | | |
| 1 | 1RD | Bar code reader start-up signal | | |
| 2 | 1SD | Data from bar code reader | | |
| 3 | 1CS | Not used (possible future RS- | | |
| | | 232C application) | | |
| 4 | 1RS | Not used (possible future RS- | | |
| | | 232C application) | | |
| 5 | N.C. | Not used | | |
| 6 | + 5V | Power supply | | |
| 7 | N.C. | Not used | | |
| 8 | COM1 | Ground | | |
| 9 | FG | Ground | | |

7-3. Block Diagrams

- 1. Overall Machine Control
- Overall -



- Main CPU -



- Main/Slave CPU Interface -



- Slave CPU -



- Communication Control -



2. Video Data Path

- Transmission -



- Reception -





3. Power Distribution

- From PSU to SPU -



- Distribution by SPU -



- UIB and LIB -



4. Scanner

- Fluorescent Lamps, + 24VD Power Supply -



- Document Feed Mechanism -



- CCD Drive -





6. Printer

- Laser Diode Drive -



7-47

- Main Scan Synchronization -


- Fusing Lamp Power Switching -



- Fusing Lamp Temperature Monitoring -







- 1. DSB (Document Sensor Board)
- 2. UIB (Upper Interface Board)
- 3. G3NCU (G3 Network Control Unit)
- 4. LSD (Laser Synchronization Detector)
- 5. SMDR (Scanner Motor Driver)
- 6. DRU (Drive and Registration Unit)
- 7. VPU (Video Processor Unit)
- 8. G3CCU (G3 Communication Control Unit)
- 9. Modem
- 10. LIB (Lower Interface Board)
- 11. SPU (Scanner/Printer Unit)
- 12. MBU (Memory Board Unit)
- 13. SCU (System Control Unit)
- 14. OPU (Operation Panel Unit)
- 15. Scanner Cover Switch
- 16. A3 [11.7"] Document Width Sensor
- 17. B4 [10.1"] Document Width Sensor
- 18. Document Sensor
- 19. Manual Feed Switch
- 20. Scan Line Sensor
- 21. LDDR (Laser Diode Driver)
- 22. Document Feed-out Clutch
- 23. ADF Clutch
- 24. Tx Motor
- 25. Varistor
- 26. Master Belt Drive Motor
- 27. BSRU (Bar Scanner Reader Unit)
- 28. Bar Code Reader
- 29. SBU (Scanner Board Unit)
- 30. Charge Corona Unit

- 31. Speaker
- 32. Quenching Lamp
- 33. Upper Unit Interlock Switch
- 34. Fluorescent Lamp Driver
- 35. Fluorescent Lamps
- 36. Pentagonal Mirror Motor
- 37. Stamp Solenoid
- 38. Copy Feed-out Sensor
- 39. Rear Transfer Fan
- 40. Main Motor
- 41. Charge Corona Fan
- 42. Registration Clutch
- 43. Development Clutch
- 44. Right Cover Switch
- 45. Toner End Sensor
- 46. Upper Paper Lift Solenoid
- 47. Upper Paper Feed Clutch
- 48. Registration Sensor
- 49. Upper Paper Height Sensor
- 50. Upper Paper End Sensor
- 51. Right Cover Interlock Switch
- 52. Upper Paper Near-end Sensor
- 53. Upper Paper Size Sensor
- 54. Power Pack
- 55. Toner Overflow Sensor
- 56. Master Unit Interlock Switch
- 57. Front Transfer Fan
- 58. Transfer Corona Unit
- 59. Fusing Lamp
- 60. SPU Fan

- 61. Master Belt Home Position Sensor
- 62. Thermostat
- 63. Thermistor
- 64. PSU Fan
- 65. Lower Paper Feed Motor
- 66. Lower Paper End Sensor
- 67. Lower Paper Feed Solenoid
- 68. Lower Paper Height Sensor
- 69. Lower Cassette Switch
- 70. Lower Paper Size Sensor
- 71. Lower Paper Lift Motor Driver
- 72. Lower Paper Near-end Sensor
- 73. Lower Paper Lift Motor
- 74. Jam Removal Switch
- 75. Lower Front Cover Switch
- 76. Hard Disk Fan
- 77. Hard Disk
- 78. PSU (Power Supply Unit)

7-5. Timing Charts

1. Scanner



2. Printer

First Page



Fusing Lamp OFF









ADF

Automatic Document Feeder: An assembly which automatically feeds documents into the scanner one page at a time.

BSRU

Bar Scanner Reader Unit: This PCB connects the optional bar code reader to the controller on the SPU board.

CCD

Charge Coupled Device: A solid state device which converts light reflected from the document into an analog video signal.

CED

Called Station Identification: A protocol signal which informs the calling station that a fax terminal has been reached.

CCITT

Consultative Committee for International Telephone and Telegraph: A part of the U.N. which sets and governs facsimile standards.

CFR

Confirmation to Receive: A protocol signal used by the receiving terminal to tell the transmitter that modem training and set-up information was accepted.

CNG

Calling Tone: A 1100 Hz tone that is used by auto-dialling machines to alert a manual receive machine that a fax is on the line.

CSI

Called Subscriber Identification: The phone number of the fax machine. This is used for identification instead of the TTI when communicating with a non-Ricoh machine.

DCN

Disconnect: A protocol signal used by the transmitter to release the line.

DCR

Data Compression and Reconstruction: Compression reduces the volume of data being sent out, and reconstruction recreates the original data at the other end. See MH, MR, MMR, and EFC.

DCS

Digital Command Signal: A protocol signal that informs the calling station of the called terminal's capabilities.

DTMF

Dual Tone Multi Frequency: A method of dialling using tones instead of pulses.

DRU

Drive/Registration Unit: This PCB contains drivers for mechanical components of the upper unit, and monitors the registration and feed-out sensors.

DSB

Document Sensor Board: This PCB contains drivers for some of the upper unit components, and contains the sensors in the ADF/scanner on-board.

EFC

Estimated Fill bit Control: A Ricoh-developed compression method used with MH, MR, or MMR. It reduces the number of fill bits on a line, making transmission time faster. New EFC does not add any fill bits, so transmission is even faster.

EOM

End Of Message: A protocol signal that informs the receiver that there are more pages to follow, using different parameters.

EOP

End Of Procedure: A protocol signal that informs the receiver that this is the end of the page of data.

FTT

Failure To Train: A protocol signal that informs the transmitter that either set-up information and/or modem training was not acceptable.

G3CCU

Group 3 Communication Control Unit: This PCB controls the interface with the public telephone network, under the control of the main cpu.

G3NCU

Group 3 Network Control Unit: This PCB contains the hardware for connecting the machine to the public telephone network. LB

Line Buffer: An area of memory where lines of video data are temporarily held before being passed on to the next process. This helps to ensure a smooth flow of data.

LCD

Liquid Crystal Display: A display on the operation panel used to inform machine status and programming prompts to the user.

LDDR

Laser Diode Driver: This PCB contains the laser diode and components for driving it.

LDS

Laser Data Synchronizer: This LSI generates the clock signal for data output to the laser diode and smooths the data to 400 x 400 dpi.

LED

Light Emitting Diode: A diode that emits light; used as an indicator lamp.

LIB

Lower Interface Board: This PCB links the SPU to the components in the lower cassette.

Laser Synchronization Detector: This PCB detects the start of each scan of the laser beam across the master belt.

LSI

Large Scale Integration: A process of making complex microchips.

MBU

Memory Board Unit: This PCB contains the system software ROMs, system parameter memory, and the battery for backing up the system parameter and voice message memories.

MCF

Message Confirmation: A protocol signal that confirms reception of the page just sent.

MH

Modified Huffman: A compression method used to reduce the number of bits needed to represent the facsimile data. MH coding is a one-dimensional run length digital scheme of coding black and white runs.

MMR

Modified Modified Read: A modified version of MR coding (see below).

MPS

Multipage Signal: A protocol signal that informs the receiving fax that more pages are to follow using the same parameters.

MR

Modified Read: A compression method (see MH above). MR coding is a two-dimensional digital coding scheme which works by comparing a line of data with the line above it.

MTF

Modulation Transfer Function: MTF is necessary for transmitting details such as fine points, thin lines, and complex characters.

NSF

Non Standard Facilities: A protocol signal that informs the calling station of the called station's capabilities. It is also called Ricoh Group 3.

NSS

Non Standard Set-up: The set-up command in Ricoh protocol.

OPU

Operation Panel Unit: This PCB contains the operation panel components.

Public Access Broadcast Exchange: A switchboard found at the customer's location.

PD

Pulse Dialling: A dialling method that uses pulses; also known as Rotary Dialling.

PIN

Procedural Interrupt Negative: A protocol signal used to inform the transmitter that the previous page was not received satisfactorily due to paper running out, paper jam, or because the Stop key was pushed on the receiving fax.

PIP

Procedural Interrupt Positive: A protocol signal that confirms reception of the previous page, and indicates that the receiver operator wants to make a voice request.

PSTN

Public Switched Telephone Network: The network normally used for telephoning.

PSU

Power Supply Unit: The PCB that supplies voltages to machine components.

QAM

Quadrature Amplitude Modulation: The modulation technique which enables fax machines to transmit at 9600 and 7200 bps over the PSTN.

RTI

Remote Terminal Identification: The RTI is displayed on the other terminal's display panel to identify the local terminal during communication.

RTN

Retrain Negative: A protocol signal that informs the transmitter that the previous page was not received satisfactorily due to excessive errors.

RTP

Retrain Positive: A protocol signal that informs the transmitter that the previous page was OK but modem retraining must be done before continuing; this is normally because of poor line condition.

SAF

Store And Forward: A memory used to hold documents for transmission later or for broadcasting, to receive confidential messages, and to receive messages when the printer is jammed or out of paper. SBU

Scanner Board Unit: This PCB contains the CCD.

SCU

System Control Unit: This PCB contains the main cpu, which controls the machine.

SMDR

Scanner Motor Driver: This PCB drives the pentagonal mirror motor.

SPU

Scanner Printer Unit: This PCB controls the scanner and printer, under the control of the main cpu.

TTI

Transmit Terminal Identification: The TTI of the sender is printed at the top of each page as it is received at the other end. It identifies the sender.

UIB

Upper Interface Board: This PCB links the SPU to components in the upper unit of the machine.

VPU

Video Processing Unit: This PCB contains circuits to process the CCD output into a digital data signal.